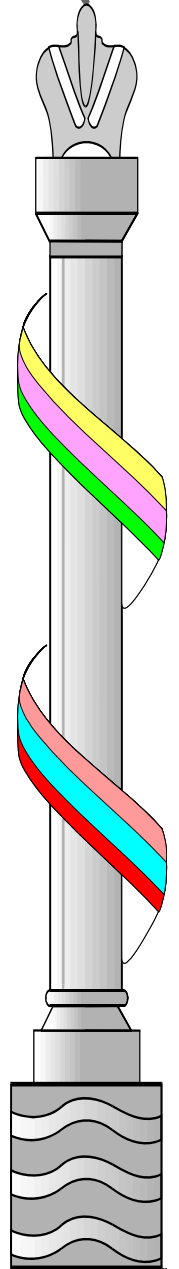
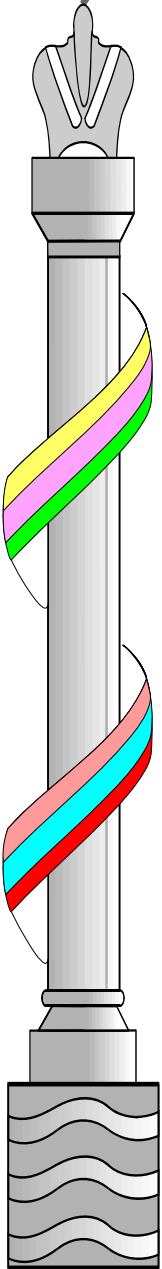


Secondary Three

General Skills



## Contents

| <i>No</i> | <i>Title</i>                            | <i>Page</i>   |
|-----------|---|---------------|
| <b>1</b>  | <b>Situations</b>                       | <b>4 - 20</b> |
| 1         | Greeting                                | 4             |
| 2         | Asking for permission                   | 4             |
| 3         | Asking People for Help                  | 4             |
| 4         | Asking for Advice                       | 5             |
| 5         | Giving Advice                           | 5             |
| 6         | Requests                                | 5             |
| 7         | Making Suggestions                      | 5             |
| 8         | Orders and Instructions                 | 6             |
| 9         | Apologizing                             | 6             |
| 10        | Asking for information                  | 6             |
| 11        | Invitation                              | 7             |
| 12        | Agreeing and disagreeing                | 7             |
| 13        | Discussing advantages and disadvantages | 7             |
| 14        | Thanking                                | 7             |
| 15        | Liking and disliking                    | 8             |
| 16        | Expressing Rules                        | 8             |
| 17        | Comparing / Expressing preference       | 8             |
| 18        | Making Comparisons                      | 8             |
| 19        | So and Neither                          | 8             |
| 20        | Congratulations                         | 8             |
| 21        | Sympathy                                | 8             |
| 22        | Asking for opinion                      | 9             |
| 23        | Expressing opinion                      | 9             |
| 24        | Expressing opinion with reasons         | 9             |
| 25        | Expressing surprise                     | 9             |
| 26        | Expressing worry                        | 9             |
| 27        | Expressing hope                         | 9             |
| 28        | Expressing fear                         | 9             |
| 29        | Asking for and giving reasons           | 9             |
| 30        | Telephoning                             | 10            |
| 31        | Making Recommendations                  | 10            |
| 32        | Persuading someone to do something      | 10            |
| 33        | Giving warning                          | 10            |
| 34        | Questions used during interviews        | 10            |
| 35        | Talking about the future                | 11            |
| 36        | General questions and answers           | 11            |
| 37        | Workbook situations                     | 11            |
| 38        | Exercises on situations                 | 15            |

| <i>No</i> | <i>Title</i>                             | <i>Page</i>    |
|-----------|--|----------------|
| <b>2</b>  | <b>Speakers &amp; Places</b>             | <b>21 - 36</b> |
|           | Speakers & Places                        | 21             |
|           | Functions                                | 23             |
|           | Workbook Exercises                       | 24             |
|           | General exercises on speakers and places | 25             |
| <b>3</b>  | <b>Reading Comprehension</b>             | <b>36 - 61</b> |
|           | Reading Comprehension                    | 36             |
|           | Reading Passages from previous Exams     | 36             |
| <b>4</b>  | <b>Paragraph Writing</b>                 | <b>62 - 73</b> |
|           | Paragraph Writing                        | 62             |
|           | Important Paragraphs                     | 65             |
|           | GSEC Paragraph Questions ( 2000 – 2013)  | 71             |
| <b>5</b>  | <b>Letter Writing</b>                    | <b>74 - 77</b> |
|           | Letter Writing                           | 74             |
|           | Letter Samples                           | 76             |
|           | GSEC Letter Questions ( 1980 – 2013)     | 77             |
| <b>6</b>  | <b>Common Notes on Writing</b>           | <b>78</b>      |
| <b>7</b>  | <b>Common Mistakes in Writing</b>        | <b>79</b>      |
| <b>8</b>  | <b>Translation</b>                       | <b>81</b>      |
| <b>9</b>  | <b>Irregular Verbs</b>                   | <b>98</b>      |

# Situations

## 1- Greeting التحية

|                                | Greeting التحية  | الرد Reply   |
|--------------------------------|--|--|
| Formal                         | Good morning / Good afternoon /<br>Good evening / Good night / Goodbye     | Good morning / Good afternoon /<br>Good evening / Good night / Goodbye                     |
| Between friends                | - Hi! / Hello / How are things?<br>- How are you?                          | - Hi! / Hello / Fine, thanks.<br>- I'm fine, thanks.                                       |
| First time                     | - How do you do?<br>- I'm pleased to meet you.<br>- It is nice to see you. | - How do you do?<br>- I'm pleased to meet you.<br>- It is nice to see you.                 |
| Saying Goodbye<br>( Formal )   | - It was nice to see you.<br>- I was pleased to meet.<br>- Goodbye         | - It was nice to see you.<br>- I was pleased to meet.<br>Goodbye. It was nice to meet you. |
| Saying Goodbye<br>( Informal ) | - Bye bye. / Bye. / See you.<br>- Bye for now.                             | - Bye bye. / Bye. / See you.<br>- Bye for now.   |

## 2 – Asking for Permission طلب الأذن

- 1) May / Could / Can I+ inf. .... ?
- 2) Is it all right to+ inf. .... ?
- 3) Is it Ok if I+ inf. .... ?
- 4) Do you mind if I + inf. .... ?
- 5) Would you mind if I + past simple ماضي بسيط .... ?

| اعطاء الأذن Giving permission  | رفض الأذن Refusing permission                                |
|--|--|
| - Certainly. / Sure. - Here you are.<br>- Yes, of course. / Of course. | - Sorry, I need it myself.<br>- Well, I'd rather you didn't. |

لاحظ طريقة الاستئذان باستخدام Do you mind if..?

- Asking for permission → - Do you mind if I borrow your dictionary?  
 - Agreeing: → - No, I don't. / No problem. / No, not at all.  
 - Disagreeing: → - Yes, I do

## 3– Asking People for Help طلب المساعدة

| طلب المساعدة Asking someone for help   | Agreeing to help someone  |
|--|---|
| - Could you lend (give) me a hand, please? هل يمكنك مساعدتي ؟<br>-Would you do me a favour, please? هل تودى لي معروفاً<br>-I wonder if you could help me with.....<br>- Do / Would you mind + v.ing .....?<br>-I can't (find...). I don't suppose you could help me. | -Yes, what's the problem?<br>-Yes, of course.<br>-Yes, what would you like?<br>-I'd be happy to help. |

لاحظ الرد على هذا السؤال:

- Would you mind + v.ing / noun ..... ?**  
 - No, I don't. / No problem. / No, not at all. (Agreeing) موافقة  
 - Yes, I do. (Disagreeing) عدم موافقة

#### 4- Asking for Advice طلب النصيحة

- 1) Which ..... do you think I should choose?
- 2) Can you give me some advice about .....
- 3) Can I ask your advice about .....
- 4) What do you think I should (ought to) do about.....?
- 5) What would you do about.....?
- 6) What do you think about + V + ing.....?
- 7) What should I do about .....

#### 5 – Giving Advice إعطاء النصيحة

- 1) You should + inf. ....
- 8) You shouldn't + inf. ....
- 2) I think you should + inf. ....
- 3) I don't think you should + inf. ....
- 4) You ought to + inf. ....
- 5) You ought not to + inf. ....
- 6) If I were you, I'd + inf. ....
- 7) If you ask me , .....
- 8) If I were in your position, I'd + inf. ....
- 9) If I were in your shoes, I'd + inf. ....
- 10) You'd ( had ) better + inf. ....
- 11) Whatever you do, .....
- 12) I really would / wouldn't+ inf. ....
- 13) Why don't you + inf.....?
- 14) How about + ing.....?

| Accepting advice قبول النصيحة   | Not accepting / Declining/ Turning down advice   |
|---|--|
| - Yes, I know I should.<br>- Yes, I'll do it now / soon.<br>-Yes, you're right.<br>- That's a great idea.<br>-I know I shouldn't.<br>-Why didn't I think of that? | - I'll think about it.<br>- I'll make up my mind about it.<br>- I'll see.<br>- I don't want to do that.<br>- I don't really think so.<br>- Absolutely not / Certainly not! |

#### 6- Requests اطلب

##### - Informal:

- 1) Can / Could / Will / Would you + inf. ....
- 2) Would you + inf. ....?

##### - Formal :

- 1) Could you +inf. ....?
- 2) Would you mind + v.ing.....?
- 3) Do you think you could +inf. ....?
- 4) I wonder if you'd mind + v.ing.....
- 5) I wonder if you could +inf. ....

#### 7- Making Suggestions عمل الاقتراحات

- 1) Why don't you / we + inf. ....
- 2) You / we could + inf. ....
- 3) Let's + inf. ....
- 4) Shall we + inf. ....
- 5) What about+ v.ing .....
- 6) How about + v.ing .....
- 7) I suggest you / we take all the factors into consideration before we decide.

### Agreeing with suggestions قبول الاقتراحات

### Disagreeing with suggestions رفض الاقتراحات

- That's a good / fantastic idea
- I'll go along with that.
- I agree.
- That's what I think.
- OK
- That sounds fine.

- I'm not very keen.
- I'm not sure about that.
- Maybe some other time
- I'd rather ....
- No, I'd prefer to .....

## 8- Orders and Instructions الأوامر و التعليمات

- في حالة الأوامر و التعليمات نستخدم:

- 1) Inf. المصدر + obj. المفعول .....
  - Open the window, Ali.      - Ola, clean the kitchen.      - Always get up early.
- 2) Don't / Never +inf. المصدر + obj. المفعول .....
  - Don't play in the street, Omer.      - Never eat in class, Eman.

- للتعبير عن الأمر بصورة مهذبة :

- I'd like you to +inf. ....
- I would be grateful if you could / would +inf. ....

### Replies

OK / All right / Sure / Certainly / As you wish

### Asking for Instructions طلب التعليمات

### Giving Instructions إعطاء التعليمات

|   |  |
|---|--|
| How can I operate (this coffee machine)?          | First, switch it on, then press the red button                                 |
| Can you show me how to (use this vacuum cleaner)? | First, connect it to the electricity supply. After that, press the red button. |
| How does (this machine) work?                     | First .... / Then..../ Next..../ Finally....                                   |

## 9 - Apologizing الاعتذار

- 1) I'm (terribly / really / awfully) sorry, but I've + p.p. ....
- 2) I don't know how to say this, but I've + p.p. ....
- 3) I must apologise for + v.ing .....
- 4) I'm sorry for + v.ing .....

### Accepting an apology قبول الاعتذار

### Not accepting an apology رفض الاعتذار

- Oh, it doesn't matter.
- Never mind.
- Don't worry about it.

- Oh, no! It was new.
- Well, I hope you will replace it.
- Well, I hope you will get me another one.
- You'd better get me another one.

Offers: - I'll buy you another one, of course. - I'll get you another one, of course.

## 10 - Asking for information طلب معلومات

### Asking for information السؤال عن معلومات

### Giving information إعطاء معلومات

- Excuse me, could I ask you some questions about .....?
- Can / Could you tell me.....?
- Do you know anything about.....?
- Does that mean.....?
- Can you say why / why not..... ?
- Thank you for your time.

- Yes, of course.
- Yes, that's fine.
- Yes, certainly.
- في حالة عدم الرغبة في الإجابة عن سؤال
- I'd rather not answer that question.
- في حالة الرد
- You're welcome

## 11- Invitation الدعوة

### Formal invitation :

- 1) I'd like to invite you to .....
- 2) Would you like to come to .....?
- 3) I'd be pleased if you accepted my invitation to .....

### Informal invitation:

- 1) How about + v.ing .....
- 2) Do you want to come to .....
- 3) I want to invite you to .....
- 4) Why don't you come to .....

| Accepting an invitation قبول الدعوة   | Refusing an invitation رفض الدعوة   |
|---|---|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- I'd be pleased to come.</li> <li>- I'd love to come.</li> <li>- Thank you, I'd love to.</li> </ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- I'm sorry I can't because I .....</li> <li>- I'm afraid I can't. I have to +inf. ....</li> <li>- I wish I could, but I have to +inf. ....</li> <li>- Thanks for asking me, but I can't.</li> </ul> |

## 12 - Agreeing and disagreeing الاتفاق و عدم الاتفاق

| Agreeing الاتفاق   | Disagreeing عدم الاتفاق  |
|--|--|
| <u>when you agree strongly</u><br><ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- I agree (with you).</li> <li>- That's right. - That's what I think.</li> <li>- I agree completely.</li> <li>- Absolutely! / Exactly!</li> <li>- It certainly is / was.</li> <li>- I couldn't agree more.</li> </ul> | <u>when you disagree politely</u><br><ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Yes. /OK, but.....</li> <li>- I know, but.....</li> <li>- You're right, but.....</li> <li>- I don't think so. I don't agree.</li> <li>- No, I disagree (with you).</li> <li>- I really can't agree.</li> </ul> |
| <u>when you agree, but not strongly</u><br><ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- I suppose so.</li> <li>- You could be right. - Maybe.</li> </ul>   | <u>when you disagree with people you know well</u><br><u>(Rude expressions)</u><br><ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- No, it isn't / doesn't.</li> <li>- That's not true. - Rubbish!</li> </ul>  |

## 13- Discussing advantages and disadvantages

مناقشة المزايا و العيوب

### For: مؤيد

- 1) -The advantage of ..... is that ..
- 2) -The good thing about ..... is that ..
- 3) - What attracts me to ..... is that ..

### Against: غير مؤيد

- 1) - .....has many disadvantages.
- 2) - The disadvantage of .....is that ..
- 3) - The bad thing about ..... is that ..
- 4) - What makes me against ..... is that ..

## 14 -Thanking الشكر

| Thanking الشكر   | Replies الرد  |
|--|---|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Thank you. - Thanks a lot.</li> <li>- Thanks. - Thank you very much.</li> </ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- You're welcome. - That's all right.</li> <li>- It's a pleasure. - Don't mention it.</li> </ul> |

## 15- Liking and disliking التفضيل وعدم التفضيل

| Asking about opinion                       | Expressing liking التفضيل                    | Expressing disliking التفضيل                    |
|--|--|---|
| -Do you like.....?                         | -I am fond of..... - I love.....             | -I don't like..                                 |
| -What do you think about..?                | - I like it/them. - I quite like ...         | - I dislike.....                                |
| -What do you think of..?                   | - It is fantastic / great/brilliant          | -I am not very keen....                         |
| -What is your opinion of...?               | -I am mad about/ crazy about...              | -I am not fond of.....                          |
| - Do you have any thing to say about.....? | -I am keen on.....<br>- I'm a big fan of ... | -I detest / loathe / despise<br>يكره الشيء بشدة |

## 16 - Expressing Rules التعبير عن القواعد

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| -You must / You must not + inf.....            | -You must not speak in the mosque.              |
| -Everyone must always/ should always+ inf..... | - Everyone must always follow the school rules. |
| -Remember to .../ Don't forget to + inf.....   | -Remember to buy the newspaper.                 |
| - Don't .. / Never + inf.....                  | - Never get close to dogs.                      |

## 17 - Comparing / Expressing preference المقارنة / التفضيل

|   |   |
|---|---|
| - I'd prefer to ....., but I'm happy to ..... instead.. | أفضل أن ..... ولكني سعيد أن ..... بدلا من ذلك         |
| - I'd rather ..... Than .....                           |   |
| - I'd like to ....., but it's probably better to .....  | ولكن من المحتمل أنه سيكون من الأفضل أن. أريد أن ..... |
| -Do we all agree? So we're going to ....                | هل نتفق جميعا؟ إذا نحن سوف .....                      |
| - That's good – we all agree.                           | حسنا! نحن نتفق جميعا.                                 |

## 18 - Making Comparisons عمل المقارنات

- |  |                                       |
|--|---------------------------------------|
| -Compared to ....., .....                  | - Compared to Heba, Omneya is lazier. |
| -You can't compare ..... and .....         | - You can't compare books and movies. |
| -I think that .....is/ are more/less ..... |                                       |
| -In my opinion, .....                      | -If you ask me, .....                 |

## 19- 'so' and 'neither'

A: I'm going out tomorrow.  
A: I don't like maths.

B: Oh. So am I.  
B: Neither do I.

## 20 – Congratulations التهنئة

| Congratulations التهنئة   | Replies   |
|---|---|
| -Congratulations.<br>-Congratulations on your results!<br>-Great news about your exam results!<br>-What great / wonderful / fantastic results | -Thanks! I'm very pleased<br>-Yes, I can't believe it myself.<br>- It is incredible, isn't it?<br>- That is more than I have expected . |

## 21 – Sympathy التعاطف / المواساة

| Sympathy التعاطف / المواساة   | Replies   |
|---|---|
| - I'm sorry to hear your bad news.<br>- I was so / terribly sorry to hear about that. | - I know, it's terrible/awful, isn't it?<br>- Well, it can't be helped<br>- Well, never mind. |



**22 - Asking about opinion السؤال عن الرأي**

- 1 – what do you think of / about ..... ?
- 2 – What is your opinion of / about ..... ?
- 3 – Do you think ..... ?
- 4 – What would you say about ..... ?
- 5 – Do you have anything to say about ..... ?

**23- Expressing opinions التعبير عن الرأي**

| <i>Expressing Opinions</i>     | <i>Agreeing with opinions</i> | <i>Disagreeing with opinions</i> |
|--------------------------------|-------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| As far as I'm concerned,       | So do I / I do too.           | I don't. / I don't think so.     |
| In my opinion / view,.....     | I agree (with you).           | I don't agree (with you)         |
| I'd say that ..                | You are (quite) right         | I disagree.                      |
| It seems to me that ..         | I think so                    | I'm not sure                     |
| I think / believe ( that ) ... | I suppose so.                 | Really!                          |

**24 - Expressing opinions with reasons**

التعبير عن الرأي مع بيان السبب

|                               |  |
|-------------------------------|--|
| I think /believe...because... | I think(believe) he will be late because he missed the bus to school.          |
| In my opinion / view...as...  | In my opinion, we should visit him at home as he is ill.                       |
| If you ask me, ...so that.... | If you ask me, she should help her so that she can finish the cooking quickly. |

**25 - Expressing surprise الدهشة**

- Good Heavens!
- What a lovely surprise!
- This is a nice surprise
- How nice to see you!

**26 - Expressing hope الامل**

- I hope you get well soon.
- I wish you good luck.
- I hope you find your handbag.
- I hope you will do well.

**27 - Expressing worry القلق**

- I'm rather worried about .....
- I can't stand my worry about .....
- I'm a bit concerned about .....
- That worries me a lot .

**28 - Expressing fear الخوف**

- I'm terrified' of .....
- I'm frightened .....
- I'm afraid of .....

**29 - Asking for and giving Reasons**

السؤال عن و اعطاء السبب

| <i>Asking for reasons</i>      | <i>Giving reasons</i>           |
|--------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| Can you tell me why?           | (It's) because ...              |
| Why ...?                       | For (two/three) reasons         |
| Is that the reason...?         | To start with ...               |
| Is that why ...?               | Firstly / Secondly, because ... |
| What (did you choose ...) for? | That's one of the reasons       |
| What's the reason for ...?     | Mainly because ...              |

### 30 – Telephoning الاتصال التليفوني

#### 1- Asking for the person you want to speak to:

- 1 - Hello. Could I / May I / Can I speak to ....., please?    2 - Is ..... there, please?  
3 - Could you put me through to ....., please?

#### 2- Response:

- One moment, please.                                  - Please hold (the line).  
- Sorry, his line is engaged / busy                  - I'll put you through.

#### 3- When you are not sure if you are speaking to the right person:

- Hello, is that Ayman?                                  - Saying who you are;  
- Hello, it's Osman from Aswan here. (formal)                  - Hi, it's Ola, (very informal)

### 31- Making Recommendations عمل التوصيات

| Making Recommendations                     | Reasons                                       |
|--|---|
| - I'm sure you'd enjoy / love (this book). | - It's a very exciting / interesting (story). |
| - You really should (read this book).      | - The characters are so real.                 |
| - I can recommend (this book) to you.      | - You won't be able to put it down.           |

### 32- Persuading someone to do something

إقناع شخص بعمل شيء

| Persuading                              | Replying                         |
|---|----------------------------------|
| - I recommend (going to) ....           | - Can you tell me more about...? |
| - You really must (visit) ...           | - What would I see there?        |
| - Can I persuade you to (go to)..?      | - What is special about...?      |
| - It would be a pity if you didn't .... | - How is ... different from ...? |

### 33 - Giving warning التحذير

| Giving warning   | Replies  |
|--|--|
| Be careful! (This is a really busy road)                 | It's OK. (I wouldn't cross if a car was coming). |
| If you don't (take care), you will (fall off the ladder) | Don't worry. I'll be careful.                    |
| Watch out! (There's a snake in front of you)             | Thank you for your warning.                      |

### 34- Questions often used during interviews

لغة المقابلات الشخصية

| Questions   | Answers  |
|---|--|
| Do you / Can you (speak English)?                     | Yes, I (speak) can speak it very well.                                   |
| Have you passed (your driving test)?                  | Yes, I have.   |
| Do you have (a driving licence)?                      | Yes, I do.   |
| What have you been doing since (you left university)? | I have been working as ...   |
| Could you tell me why you want to work for us?        | Because I have the right qualifications for this job.                    |
| Why do you think you'd be good at the job?            | I'm (a sociable person, so I'll enjoy meeting and talking to customers). |

### 35 - Talking about the future

| Questions   | Answers   |
|---|---|
| Do you think we will (have libraries in the future)?<br>What do you think will happen (to the internet) in the future?<br>Do you think that (man will live on other planets one day)? | Yes, I'm sure we will.<br>It will (definitely) become more popular.<br>I don't think that will happen in the near future. |

### 36- General Questions & Answers

| Questions  | Answers                               |
|--|---------------------------------------|
| How would you like your tea?                         | -Without sugar, please.               |
| How would you like your fish / meat?                 | -Grilled, مشوي please.                |
| How do you like my shirt?                            | -It's very nice.                      |
| What was (the thief) like? للسؤال عن وصف شخص         | -He was short and fat.                |
| Can I see your (ticket/passport), please?            | -Yes, of course. Here you are.        |
| Can you lend me your (camera), please?               | -Yes, of course. / I'm sorry I can't. |
| How much is this it? =How much does it cost?         | -It's 700 pounds.                     |
| Which platform does the train leave from?            | -It leaves from platform 5.           |
| Where do you come from?                              | -I come from England.                 |
| How do you find your job? ما رأيك في وظيفتك؟         | -It's tiring / boring / exciting.     |
| What was (the film / match / journey) like?          | -It was great / nice / wonderful.     |
| What's the matter with you? - What's wrong with you? | -I'm so tired. / I have a headache.   |
| Can you tell me the way to...? للسؤال عن الطريق      | -Go straight and turn left.           |
| What would you like to begin with?                   | -Some salad, please.                  |
| What's your size?                                    | -Size 42, please.                     |
| What's the weather like today?                       | -It's very nice.                      |
| Single or double?                                    | -Single, please.                      |
| Single or married?                                   | -I'm married.                         |
| Single or return?                                    | -Single, please.                      |
| What do you do? = What's your job?                   | -I'm an engineer.                     |
| What's your favourite hobby?                         | -It's football.                       |
| How do you spend your spare time?                    | -Reading and listening to music.      |
| How long have you been studying French?              | -For 3 years.                         |
| Can I speak to the manager, please?                  | -O.K. Hold on, please.                |
| How much do you earn?                                | -Five hundred pounds.                 |
| How much is the room per night?                      | -It's 300 pounds.                     |
| Can I book/reserve a room for 2 nights?              | -Yes, of course.                      |

### 37 - Workbook Situations

Respond to each of the following situations:

(1)

- Someone says that space exploration is too expensive. You agree.  
.....
- Someone says that computers are a bad thing. You do not have the same opinion.  
.....
- One of your friends says he thinks walking in space would be very frightening. You think he's right.  
.....
- You hear someone say that all astronauts are very rich. You know this is not true.  
.....

(2)

1. Your friend has joined a reading group. You want to know the number of people in the group.
2. Someone tells you that Anthony Hope wrote *The Prisoner of Zenda* in three months. You are very surprised by this.
3. You are told that Anthony Hope paid for the publication of his first novel himself. Express how you feel about this.
4. Someone tells you that Anthony Hope wrote 37 works of fiction altogether. You are interested but not surprised by this.

(3)

1. You are doing a survey about energy use in your town. You would like to ask someone some questions. Explain the situation.
2. You want to know about a friend's energy-saving habits. What do you ask?
3. You hear someone use a word you do not understand. The word is hydroelectric. What do you ask?
4. Someone asks you how you usually travel to school every day. How do you reply?

(4)

1. A friend asks for your opinion about modern novels.
2. Someone asks you what you were doing at six o'clock yesterday evening.
3. Someone asks you what you think the best thing is about short stories. Give your opinion.
4. A friend asks you what you used to read when you were five.

(5)

1. A friend asks for your advice about keeping fit. Advise him.
2. You want some advice from a friend about how you can eat more healthily. What do you ask?
3. A friend wants to meet new people, but he/she is very shy. Make a recommendation.
4. Ask your teacher for advice about how to do well in the next English test.

(8)

1. A friend asks you whether you would like to go somewhere together at the weekend.
2. The same friend does not want to go to the beach, but suggests the swimming pool.
3. A friend suggests that you join a book club together. You do not want to join a book club, but you would like to join a sports club.
4. The same friend suggests going to the cinema in your town tomorrow. You are not sure.

(10)

1. A friend is looking worried. You want to know why. What do you ask?
2. Someone asks if you had a good holiday. You enjoyed your holiday, but the weather was not very good. This was a disappointment.
3. A friend asks what subject you would like to be better at.
4. Someone asks you about a school trip you went on. You learnt a lot, but you did not take as many photos as you had planned to.

(12)

1. You would like to find out what music your friend likes. What do you ask?  
.....
2. A friend asks you what sort of music you enjoy.  
.....
3. You want to find out if your friend plays a musical instrument.  
.....
4. A friend asks you whether there is any sort of music you don't like.  
.....

(15)

1. A friend asks you if you think people will read books in a hundred years time.  
.....
2. In a conversation, a friend uses the word gadgets. You do not understand the word.  
.....
3. A friend asks if you think people will have their own spaceships in 50 years.  
.....
4. A friend uses the words travel and journey in the same sentence. You do not understand the different meanings of these two words.  
.....

(16)

1. An interviewer asks if you would work some evenings during the week. You would be happy to do this.  
.....
2. You want to be able to contact a person you have just met, but you do not have their details.  
.....
3. Your friend is applying for a new job. This is a surprise and you ask him the reason.  
.....
4. You want to know whether someone you are interviewing can drive.  
.....

(18)

1. An educational adviser asks you what skills you would like to improve. You have never been very good at maths.  
.....
2. Someone has asked you for educational advice. Find out what qualifications this person has.  
.....
3. A friend wants to go back to education, but cannot leave home to go to university. Suggest a distance learning course.  
.....
4. A friend suggests that you do an evening course to improve your English.  
.....

Reviews:

(B)

1. A friend asks you your opinion about the importance of the rainforests. Say what you think.  
.....
2. A friend who has never visited your country asks for your advice about places to see in Egypt.  
.....
3. A friend from another country wants to phone someone from a public phone in Egypt. He/She has never done this before. Tell him/her what to do first.  
.....
4. Someone asks what you think about films which have been made from books.  
.....

(D)

1. A friend asks how you feel about an important English test you have next week.  
.....
2. A friend asks you if you had a good weekend. You enjoyed the weekend, but you think you wasted a lot of time.  
.....
3. One of your friends is very busy. You would like to help him or her.  
.....
4. A friend asks you what kind of books you enjoy reading.  
.....

(E)

1. A friend asks you why you enjoy sport. Name two reasons.

2- Warn your friend who is about to cross the road, because there is a car coming very fast.

3. Your brother is not working hard enough at school. You think he will get very low marks. Warn him.

4. A friend asks you whether you think people will continue to explore space in the future.

Practice Test (1)

1. Someone says they think magazines are a waste of money. Disagree, giving a reason.

2. A friend from England calls and asks about the weather. You see dark clouds in the sky.

3. One of your friends watched a football match on TV and found it boring. You have a different opinion.

4. You hear someone use a word you do not understand. The word is energy.

Practice Test (2)

1. A foreign friend wants to know how to make tea the Egyptian way. Tell him/her what to do first.

2. Someone asks what you were doing at eight o'clock this morning.

3. A friend asks you what you think about TV news programmes.

4. A friend wants a job to help poor people. Advise him or her.

Practice Test (3)

1. You do not understand why it goes dark at night. Ask someone to explain it.

2. A friend suggests that swimming is a good way to keep fit. State another way.

3. A friend suggests that you join a squash club together. Suggest something else.

4. Someone asks where your friend Ali is. You have not seen him for a long time. You are almost certain he is on holiday.

Practice Test (4)

1. Your brother looks worried. You want to know whether he has a problem.

2- Your mother was very busy yesterday. You regret not helping her.

3. An English friend asks you how you celebrate Sham El-Nessim.

4. You forgot to thank a friend for a present he/she gave you.

Practice Test (5)

1. Your friend starts to cross a road when you see a car coming. Warn your friend.

2. Someone asks if you think people will ~till have cars in 50 years.

3. You hear the word magnet on the radio. Ask a friend what it means.

4. A friend asks you why you have such an expensive mobile phone. You have two reasons.

Practice Test (6)

1. You are interviewing someone for a job. Find out about their qualifications and experience.

2. Your friend looks like he/she hasn't been sleeping for days. Advise him/her.

3. An interviewer has asked you why you have applied for a job in a particular company. Give reason.

4. You do not understand what distance learning is. Ask a friend.

### مواقف موقع الوزارة

1. You ask your friend if he took part in the 25th January revolution.

2. You want to know about a friend's studying habits. What do you ask?

3. You are asked about the reason for building the Aswan High Dam.

4. You advise your little sister not to let the water tap run all the time.

5. You invite your friend to go to the theatre.

6. It's the beginning of the New Year. What would you say?

7. You don't think that something is true.

8. A friend asks you what you think about TV news programmes.

9- Your friend thinks that the television has many disadvantages. You agree.

10- Someone asks if you had a good stay in Luxor. You enjoyed the time there.

11- A friend asks you if you think people will read newspapers in a hundred years time. You think they won't.

13- You see a boy throwing litter in the street.

### المواقف التي وردت في امتحانات سابقة في المنهج الحديث :

1] Respond to each of the following situations: دور أول 2011

1- Your younger brother is very busy. You would like to help him.

2- A classmate asks you why you enjoy playing sports. Name one reason.

3- Someone asks you the time of the next train to Aswan.

4- Your sister asks you your opinion about the importance of e-books.

1) Respond to each of the following situations: دور ثاني 2011

1- A tourist wants to visit some places of interest in Egypt.

2- A friend asks about your plans for the next holiday.

3- Your father wants to know your opinion about the TV serials.

4- The teacher asks Samia which language skill she would like to improve.

1. Respond to each of the following situations: ( 2012 )

1- A friend says: "You look very cheerful today." Tell him/her why.

2- A person is using his mobile while crossing the highway. Warn him.

3- Your cousin is going out with you in a small boat. Advise him to wear a lifejacket.

4- You are on a crowded train, and there's only one empty seat. What do you ask the person sitting next to it?

Respond to each of the following situations: دور ثاني 2012

1- Your brother is preparing to leave for the airport. Offer to give him a hand.

2- A friend is worried about an interview tomorrow. Suggest a way to make him/her feel better

3- Your neighbour has been in hospital for a week. Express regret for not visiting him/her.

4- You arrive late for an appointment with your manager. Apologise and give a reason.

**السودان 2012** Respond to each of the following situations:

1- You do not understand why it goes dark at night. Ask someone to explain it.

2- A friend suggests that swimming is a good way to keep fit. State another way.

3- A friend suggests that you join a squash club together. Suggest something else.

4- Someone asks where your friend Ali is. You have not seen him for a long time. You are almost certain he is on holiday.

**السودان 2013** Respond to each of the following situations:

1- Your uncle thinks that logging on the internet is a waste of time. Disagree giving a reason.

2- A tourist wants to know the places of interest in Egypt.

3- Your neighbour thanked you because you carried his heavy bag.

4- Your friend suggests going to Al Fostat Park. Suggest somewhere else.

**38- Exercises on Situations**

**1- Respond to each of the following situation:**

1. A friend asks about your holiday plans for next summer.
2. A child is riding his bicycle in the middle of a crowded street. Give him/her advice.
3. A friend asks for your advice about what he/she can do for charity.
4. A friend asks for your opinion about a new computer he/she has just bought.
5. A friend asks if they can interview you to find out your opinions on the environment. You are happy about this. What do you say?
6. A friend asks if you are enjoying your book and you agree.
7. A friend asks if you'd mind lending him your bike.
8. A friend asks you a question you would prefer not to answer.
9. A friend asks you if you think man will live on the moon in a hundred year's time.
10. A friend asks you to play chess with him, but you have an important exam the next day.
11. A friend asks you to tell him about the advantage of taking exercise.
12. A friend asks you what language people speak in England.
13. A friend asks you what language they speak in Australia. What do you answer?
14. A friend asks you what you know about Omar Samra.
15. A friend asks you whether you think people will continue to explore space in the future.
16. A friend asks you whether you'd like tea or coffee.
17. A friend asks you why you enjoy reading newspapers.
18. A friend asks you why you enjoy reading novels.
19. A friend asks you why you enjoy sport. Name two reasons.
20. A friend asks you why you use the internet. Give two reasons.
21. A friend asks you why you'd like to be a doctor.
22. A friend asks your advice about the best way to keep fit. What do you reply?
23. A friend believes that football is the best form of exercise. You don't think the same.
24. A friend borrowed money from you. You ask him/her politely to give it back to you.
25. A friend is trying to persuade you to visit a place you have never heard of. You'd like more information about this place. What do you say?
26. A friend is visiting you in your house. You offer him/her something.
27. A friend of you asks you what you know about Professor Magdi Yacoub.
28. A friend of yours invites you to his party, you refuse politely.
29. A friend says he or she wants to do an individual sport to keep fit. Give advice.



30. A friend thinks that travelling by plane is dangerous. Express your opinion.
31. A friend wants to know what job you would like to do when you leave school.
32. A friend wants to know what your dream job would be and why.
33. A friend wants to know where your dream holiday would be to. You really enjoy beach holidays. Your friend asks why you would recommend your new DVD. State a reason. What do you say?
34. A friend wants you to turn on the fan.
35. A friend wonders if he can use your pencil.
36. A relative wants to know the best thing about your school.
37. A travel agent is trying to persuade you to go to a newly discovered tourist site. You want to know why this place is better than another. What do you ask?
38. Ahmed asks you about the qualities that a good teacher should have.
39. Ahmed suggests going the beach but you'd like to play.
40. Anwar thanks you for helping him with his heavy bag.
41. At an interview, you are asked about your qualifications.
42. Farid asks you about the characteristics of a good friend.
43. In a conversation, a friend uses the word 'concept'. You do not understand the word.
44. In your friend's opinion people spend too long on the phone. What do you say?
45. It is the end of your interview. You would like to thank someone for answering your questions.
46. Mariam asks your opinion about the film you saw together last night.
47. Mustafa asks your opinion about climbing mountains.
48. Nahla eats food with too much fat in it.
49. One of your friends is getting too fat. He's asking for your advice.
50. Ramy always feels tired. Give him advice.
51. Salem believes that fresh fruit and vegetables are good for health. Express your opinion.
52. Sameh asks you about your plans for your next weekend.
53. Somebody wants to speak to your father, but your father isn't at home.
54. Someone advises you to do something. You don't want to accept the advice.
55. Someone asks about your age on your next birthday.
56. Someone asks for your advice. They want to know what you would do to keep fit.
57. Someone asks you a question that you do not want to answer.
58. Someone asks you how good you are at maths.
59. Someone asks you if you like pop music.
60. Someone asks you the way to the nearest hospital.
61. Someone asks you to compare books and films. You don't think it's possible to compare the two. Films are much more exciting for you. What do you say?
62. Someone asks you what famous Egyptian you admire.
63. Someone asks you what you think makes a good charity worker.
64. Someone asks you what you think makes a good friend.
65. Someone asks you what you think the most important invention is.
66. Someone asks you what your favourite hobby is.
67. Someone asks you why you enjoy reading newspapers.
68. Someone asks your advice about the best way to keep fit.
69. Someone asks your opinion about good holiday weather.
70. Someone asks your opinion about modern technology.
71. Someone asks your opinion about what makes a good team player.
72. Someone asks your opinion about what makes a successful swimmer.
73. Someone stops you at street and asks you some questions
74. Someone stops you in the street and wants to ask you questions about when and where your family goes shopping. You do not have time to answer any questions.
75. Someone suggests going to the cinema and you agree.
76. Someone wants to know the best thing about your last holiday.
77. Suggest to your little brother some activities that are more useful than watching TV.
78. The owner of the factory asks if he can interview you, but you have too much to do.
79. The sky has suddenly gone dark. Someone asks what you think about the weather.
80. The teacher asks you what you think should be done to solve traffic problems in big cities.
81. The teacher said something in a low voice. You ask him/her to repeat.
82. The teacher said something, but you didn't hear it. What do you say?
83. Torn asks you about your nationality.
84. Warn your friend who is about to cross the road, because there is a car coming very fast.
85. You are looking for a necklace you have lost. Ask your brother about it.

86. You accept your friend's apology for losing your book.
87. You advise your sister to wash her hands before eating.
88. You and a friend are talking about the next weekend. You suggest something.
89. You are asked about the keys to good health.
90. You are at a gas station. You need to have your car filled. What do you say to the attendant?
91. You are at a travel agency inquiring about an early morning flight to Paris next Monday. What do you say?
92. You are at home. You want to turn on the TV to watch a film.
93. You are at the airport to see a friend off. What do you say?
94. You are at your friend's house. Your parents have told you to be home at five o'clock.
95. You are booking a flight to London at a travel agency.
96. You are doing a project on your local environment. You want some information from an important person in your town. Ask formal question.
97. You are going to buy a present for your sister. You ask a friend for advice.
98. You are going to have lunch with your younger brother. He has been playing outside. You look at his hands. What do you say to him?
99. You are going to interview someone you don't know. What do you say?
100. You are introduced to someone who you have never met before.
101. You are invited to a wedding party, but you refuse politely.
102. You are invited to dinner at a big restaurant, but you refuse the invitation politely.
103. You are late for work. You apologise to your employer, giving a reason.
104. You are looking for a magazine you have lost. Ask a friend about it.
105. You are looking for a necklace you have lost. Ask your brother about it.
106. You are sitting on a bus and the person next to you starts to smoke.
107. You are standing in a queue and someone steps in front of you without permission. Comment politely.
108. You are trying to persuade a foreign friend to visit an interesting place which is off the beaten track. You think your friend will regret it if he or she doesn't go. What do you say?
109. You are visiting someone in hospital when you see another visitor smoking.
110. You ask a friend about his plans for the week end.
111. You ask a friend if he likes living in the countryside.
112. You ask a friend to help you carry a heavy bag.
113. You ask a friend which subject he/she likes best.
114. You ask an old person what his/her life was like when he/she was young.
115. You ask an older person about his education.
116. You ask someone to shut the window as it is cold.
117. You ask Tamer about the troubles Ahmed had. Write a question.
118. You ask your cousin, Ashraf, to have some tea at home.
119. You ask your friend about the price of his new shoes.
120. You ask your friend if he has any information about cloning الأستنساخ.
121. You ask your friend's opinion about a shirt you've just bought.
122. You ask your sister to clean the room for you.
123. You ask your uncle Said when he began his first job.
124. You can't hear what the teacher is saying.
125. You chose a holiday to Spain, but your friends all chose Italy, which was cheaper. You think their idea is probably better. What do you say?
126. You congratulate your brother who has just bought a new car.
127. You don't have any tea left. Explain why you are going to the shop.
128. You don't know how to operate the coffee machine. You ask your brother for instructions.
129. You don't know how to turn on the heater. You ask your mother.
130. You express your opinion about Tuk Tuk.
131. You have a guest at home. You want to make him/her feel comfortable and relaxed.
132. You have finished an exercise in the class.
133. You have finished reading "Gulliver's Travels". You recommend it to a friend.
134. You have just agreed to see a film at the cinema with two friends. You are quite happy, but you did not choose the film. What do you say?
135. You have just been introduced to Mrs Brown, a person you have not met before.
136. You have just bought a new DVD about space travel. Recommend it to a friend.
137. You have just heard that Egypt has won an important match.
138. You have just read a new magazine for young people. Recommend it to a friend.

139. You have just seen the film of a book you like. You did not enjoy the film as much as the book. A friend asks you what you thought of the film.
140. You have just told your friend something that is untrue. Now you feel ashamed.
141. You have met a foreign tourist who does not know your town. You think he or she would like this place even though it is off the beaten track. What do you say to persuade him or her?
142. You have missed school because you were ill. You would like some help from your teacher. You have to phone a friend's mother and tell her that her child is ill. What do you say?
143. You have spilt some coffee on the carpet. What do you say to your mother?
144. You invite a friend to your birthday party.
145. You meet a foreign friend at the airport. You ask him/her politely about his/her flight.
146. You meet a foreigner who asks you to tell him the way to the citadel.
147. You meet a foreigner who asks you to tell him/her the way to the Citadel.
148. You meet a friend who you have not seen for a long time.
149. You meet a tourist at the airport. You want to give him a hand.
150. You meet a visitor to your country at the airport. You want to make him feel at home.
151. You meet an old friend after a very long time.
152. You meet your friend Ali in the street.
153. You need advice from your brother about a houseplant you have just bought.
154. You need permission **الذن** to use a computer at school.
155. You need to have an appointment to see the doctor.
156. You recommend a new CD by your favourite singer to Ali.
157. You see a classmate who has been away for many weeks.
158. You see a friend reading a book. Ask your friend what the book is called and who wrote it.
159. You suggest going out for a walk to your cousin.
160. You suggest spending the summer holiday in Alexandria.
161. You tell your friend the reason why you enjoy learning English.
162. You tell your friend your favorite writer :
163. You think that something your friend has just said is wrong.
164. You think that you and your friend are going swimming this afternoon, but you want to check with your friend that you are right.
165. You think your friend likes fish, but you want to check.
166. You think your friend's favourite school subject is history, but you want to check .
167. you think. What do you reply?
168. You understand the story, but you are not sure what its real subject is.
169. You understood the film you watched but you are not sure what it really shows.
170. You want a friend to help you with something.
171. You want permission from your father to go to the cinema tonight.
172. You want permission from your father to go to the theatre tonight.
173. You want to ask Ali the reason why he likes science.
174. You want to ask one of your grandparents about his life when she was young.
175. You want to ask your grandfather about the beginning of his job.
176. You want to ask your uncle some questions about genetic engineering.
177. You want to buy something for your mother for her birthday. You ask a friend for advice.
178. You want to get information from someone.
179. You want to know a friend's opinion of a book you have both read.
180. You want to know a friend's opinion of a tennis match you both went to.
181. You want to know if your grandfather did anything when he was not working.
182. You want to know something about remote sensing.
183. You want to know which faculty your friend would like to join.
184. You want to know which subject your uncle enjoyed most when he was a student.
185. You want to know your brother's opinion of a film you both watched on TV last night.
186. You want to know your friend's opinion of the new mobile phone.
187. You want to know your friend's opinion of the DVD you bought. What do you say?
188. You want to persuade your brother to go with you to the Pyramids.
189. You want your sister to help you prepare lunch for the family.
190. You want your teacher to help you answer a certain question.
191. You warn your sister not to play with matches.
192. You're asked about the best way to keep fit.
193. You're asked about your favourite film director.
194. You're asked about your marital status.

195. You're asked how you can be a good sportsman.
196. You're asked if you can help Mona with a computer problem. You agree.
197. You're asked to help your cousin with a math problem. You agree.
198. You're asked why you admire Dr. Magdi Yacoub.
199. You're asked why you prefer living in a muddy house.
200. You're asked why you'd like to be a civil engineer.
201. You're doing a project on wildlife. Ask a friend of yours for more information.
202. You're introduced to a foreign friend.
203. You're trying to convince Tom to visit a certain place which is off the beaten track.
204. You're trying to persuade your pen friend Jack to visit the Cairo town.
205. You've just met a friend who you haven't seen for a year. You want to know about your friend's activities since you last met.
206. You'd like to go on a family trip to Alex. Make this suggestion to your father.
207. You'd like to speak to your friend Ahmed on the phone.
208. Your brother has passed his exams with high marks.
209. Your brother isn't working hard enough at school. You will think he will get very low marks. Warn him.
210. Your brother suggested watching a match on TV. You agree.
211. Your brother thinks that men and women are equal. You agree with him.
212. Your classmate is talking loudly in the library.
213. Your cousin asks if you have any pen friends and how you communicate with them.
214. Your cousin has poor teeth. Give him advice.
215. Your cousin suggests spending the weekend at Aswan. Politely refuse; giving a reason.
216. Your cousin thinks that computers are useful, you agree.
217. Your father tells you that you have come first in the exam.
218. Your friend asks for some advice on how to study.
219. Your friend asks if you want to stay until eight o'clock.
220. Your friend believes that violent films are exciting. You don't agree.
221. Your friend gives you a present.
222. Your friend has a worried expression on his/her face. Ask him/her why.
223. Your friend has lost his camera and asks your advice.
224. Your friend is ill and needs to see a doctor.
225. Your friend looks overweight.
226. Your friend offers to go to the dentist with you, but you tell him /her not to worry, you can go on your own.
227. Your friend says something which you believe is untrue. What do you say?
228. Your friend suggests having a dinner in a restaurant. You like the idea.
229. Your friend suggests spending the weekend studying. You agree.
230. Your friend Tamer says he wants to do an individual sport. Give advice.
231. Your friend tells you some very bad news.
232. Your friend tells you that she passed the English test.
233. Your friend tells you the magazine is good, but you want to make sure. You want to tell a friend not to eat too much fat.
234. Your friend wants to go swimming. You disagree and suggest another sport.
235. Your friend wants to know where your dream house would be. What do you answer?
236. Your friend wishes you success in your exams.
237. Your neighbour keeps a wild dog. You express your fear.
238. Your pen friend has just arrived. You meet him or her at the airport. What do you say?
239. Your sister has just won an international contest.
240. Your sister says she won't be home for lunch. Report this to your mother.
241. Your sister wants to cook a meal, but can't decide what to make.
242. Your teacher asks you why you enjoy learning English.
243. Your uncle is in hospital.
244. You've have just heard that your friend Ali is seriously ill in hospital.
245. You've spilt some coffee on the carpet. You apologize to your mother.

## 2 - Speakers & Places

| Place                                 | Speaker (A/B)   | Speaker (A/B)   |
|---------------------------------------|---|---|
| accounting office مكتب محاسبة         | Accountant محاسب -  | client عميل   |
| Airline office مكتب سفريات            | Ticket clerk موظف التذاكر                                   | Customer  |
| Airport مطار                          | Check-in- clerk موظف الفحص /<br>security officer موظف الامن | Passenger / traveler / tourist                          |
| Aliens' department مصلحة شئون الاجانب | official  | foreigner اجنبي - tourist / traveller                   |
| Ambulance عربة اسعاف                  | Paramedic مسعف  | Patient / injured person                                |
| baker's / bakery المخبز               | Baker الفرن   | Customer / buyer / shopper                              |
| Bank بنك                              | Bank clerk موظف البنك - banker -<br>bank manager            | cashier صراف - client - accountant -                    |
| Barber's محل الحلاق                   | Barber حلاق   | client  |
| Beach شاطئ                            | Tourist - rescuer منقذ                                      | tourist - swimmer - holiday maker                       |
| Beauty shop مركز تجميل                | beautician اخصائي تجميل                                     | customer  |
| Birds' shop محل طيور                  | Sales person بائع   | Customer  |
| Bookshop مكتبة بيع كتب                | shop assistant / Salesman بائع                              | customer / buyer  |
| Building site موقع بناء               | Builder - worker  | engineer - landlord                                     |
| Bus                                   | Conductor كمسارى  | passenger   |
| butcher's محل الجزار                  | Butcher الجزار  | Customer  |
| café / coffee shop                    | waiter جرسون / waitress نادلة                               | customer  |
| Car agency معرض سيارات                | Car agent   | customer  |
| Car rental agency مكتب إيجار سيارات   | Clerk   | Driver  |
| carpenter's workshop ورشة نجار        | Carpenter النجار  | customer / flat owner                                   |
| CD/Record shop اسطوانات               | shop assistant  | customer  |
| Check-in desk مكان التفتيش            | Check-in clerk موظف الفحص                                   | Passenger   |
| chemist's / pharmacy الصيدلية         | pharmacist / chemist صيدلى                                  | customer / patient مريض                                 |
| Church كنيسة                          | Priest قسيس   | Christian   |
| Cinema - theatre سينما - مسرح         | Usher مرشد المقاعد - ticket clerk                           | viewer متفرج / Spectator متفرج                          |
| Classroom فصل / school                | Teacher / inspector   | student / worker  |
| clothes shop محل ملابس                | shop assistant بائع   | customer / buyer  |
| Club نادى                             | Trainer-trainee متدرب - coach مدرب                          | player لاعب - athlete - sportsperson                    |
| College كلية                          | Professor   | student   |
| Company شركة                          | Manager مدير - interviewer<br>secretary سكرتير              | client - Applicant متقدم لوظيفة                         |
| Computer centre مركز كمبيوتر          | Programmer مبرمج - salesperson                              | client  |
| computer lab معمل الحاسب              | computer teacher  | teacher student   |
| confectioner's محل الحلويات           | confectioner الحلواني seller                                | Customer / buyer / shopper                              |
| Court محكمة                           | Judge قاضى - lawyer محامى -                                 | criminal مجرم - Witness شاهد                            |
| Customs الجمارك                       | An official موظف  | Passenger مسافر   |
| dentist's / clinic / hospital         | Dentist - nurse   | patient   |
| dentist's عيادة الأسنان               | Dentist طبيب أسنان  | Patient   |
| doctor's عيادة                        | A doctor  | A patient مريض  |
| Dress making school                   | Teacher   | learner   |
| dressmaker's محل الخياطة              | dressmaker الخياطة  | customer  |
| Driving school مدرسة قيادة            | Instructor معلم   | learner   |
| Electrician's محل اصلاح ادوات كهربية  | Electrician فنى اصلاح ادوات كهربية                          | customer  |
| Electronics shop محل ادوات كهربية     | Sales person بائع -   | Customer  |
| Embassy سفارة                         | Ambassador السفير - clerk موظف<br>Official - موظف رسمى كبير | emigrant مهاجر - passenger<br>citizen - applicant متقدم |
| Exam room حجرة امتحان                 | Observer ملاحظ  | student   |
| Exchange office مكتب صرافة            | Teller صراف   | Customer  |
| Factory مصنع                          | Manager - clerk - engineer                                  | technician فنى - worker -<br>customer                   |
| Fire station المطافى                  | Fireman - officer   | reporter مبلغ   |

|   |  |   |
|---|--|---|
| fish market                             | Fishmonger بائع السمك                                  | Customer / buyer / shopper                                      |
| Flat                                    | Landlord صاحب البيت                                    | tenant مستأجر   |
| flower shop / florist's محل الزهور      | flower seller / florist بائع الورد                     | Customer / buyer / shopper                                      |
| Fossil exhibition معرض حفريات           | Keeper حارس - guide                                    | visitor   |
| Fruit seller's- Fruits shop محل الفاكهة | fruit seller الفكهاني                                  | Customer / buyer / shopper                                      |
| Furniture shop محل موبيليا              | Sales person   | client  |
| Gallery صالته عرض                       | Artist - فنان  | visitor   |
| greengrocer's محل الخضروات              | greengrocer الخضري                                     | Customer / buyer / shopper                                      |
| Greengrocer's محل الخضراوات             | Greengrocer بائع الخضر                                 | Customer  |
| grocer's / grocery محل البقالة          | grocer البقال  | Customer / buyer / shopper                                      |
| Hairdresser's                           | Hairdresser كوافير                                     | Customer  |
| Home منزل – house - flat                | A parent احد الوالدين husband زوج<br>- Host صاحب البيت | son ابن – daughter ابنة - Wife زوجة<br>servant خادم - guest ضيف |
| hospital emergency room طوارئ           | GP = general practitioner ممارس عام<br>doctor / nurse  | patient / nurse ممرضة   |
| Hospital مستشفى                         | Doctor – nurse –                                       | patient – visitor   |
| Hotel فندق                              | Receptionist موظف استقبال                              | guest ضيف   |
| Information desk مكتب استعلامات         | Information clerk -                                    | traveller – passenger   |
| Internet Café مركز انترنت               | Assistant – engineer –                                 | client  |
| Jail- prison – a cell السجن             | Officer – policeman -                                  | prisoner - سجين - visitor                                       |
| jeweller's محل جواهر                    | Jeweler الجواهرجي                                      | Customer/ buyer   |
| Kitchen                                 | mother – wife – husband                                | Daughter – son  |
| Laboratory معمل                         | Scientist / Teacher / Professor                        | Scientist / student   |
| Laundry / dry cleaner's مغسلة           | Cleaner  | Customer  |
| Laundry المغسلة                         | Laundry man – عامل المغسلة                             | client  |
| Lawyer's office مكتب محامي              | Lawyer محامي   | client  |
| Library مكتبة                           | Librarian أمين المكتبة                                 | Student / reader  |
| mechanic's workshop / garage            | Mechanic الميكانيكي                                    | customer / driver / carowner                                    |
| mechanic's ورشة                         | Mechanic ميكانيكي                                      | Car owner مالك السيارة  |
| Monastery دير                           | Monk راهب - prayer مصلى                                | visitor   |
| Mosque مسجد                             | Sheikh شيخ   | prayer مصلى   |
| multi-media lab معمل وسائط متعددة       | teacher / pupil  | teacher student   |
| Museum متحف                             | Tour guide مرشد  | Tourist   |
| Museum متحف                             | Guide مرشد - tourist                                   | visitor زائر  |
| Music hall                              | Musician   | Audience جمهور  |
| music room حجرة الموسيقى                | music teacher  | student pupil   |
| newsagent's كشك أو محل الجرائد          | Newsagent بائع الصحف                                   | Customer / buyer / shopper                                      |
| Newspaper's agency مكتب جرائد           | Newspaper's agent - بائع جرائد                         | customer  |
| Nursery حضانه                           | Baby sitter - جليسة اطفال                              | parent – child  |
| oculist's /eye clinic عيادة عيون / رمد  | Oculist دكتور عيون                                     | patient   |
| Office                                  | Manager مدير   | Employee موظف / applicant متقدم لوظيفة                          |
| Opera house الاوبرا                     | Booking clerk – usher                                  | spectator   |
| Optician's محل البصريات                 | Optician فنى بصريات                                    | Customer  |
| Passport department مصلحة الجوازات      | Official موظف  | citizen مواطن   |
| Pastry محل حلويات                       | Salesperson  | customer  |
| pet shop محل الحيوانات الأليفة          | pet shop seller بائع الحيوانات الأليفة                 | Customer / buyer / shopper                                      |
| Petrol station محطة بنزين               | Attendant عامل   | Driver  |
| Pharmacy صيدلية                         | Chemist صيدلي  | Customer / patient  |
| Photo shop محل تصوير                    | photographer / cameraman                               | customer  |
| Plane طائره                             | Air hostess - مضيئة جويه Pilot طيار                    | Passenger -flight attendant مضيئة جويه                          |
| Playground ملعب                         | Referee حكم - coach - trainer                          | player  |
| plumber's محل السباك                    | Plumber السباك   | customer / flat owner   |
| Police station مركز شرطه                | Officer ضابط   | reporter - citizen  |
| post office مكتب البريد                 | post officer / clerk موظف بريد                         | Customer / citizen  |
| present shop محل هدايا                  | Sales person بائع                                      | Customer  |
| principal's room غرفة الناظر            | principal / headmaster                                 | teacher student   |

|   |   |   |
|---|---|---|
| Railway station محطة القطار                           | Booking clerk – موظف الحجز –<br>porter – شغال   | passenger – traveller<br>information clerk موظف الاستعلامات |
| Restaurant مطعم                                       | chef طبخ / waiter                               | customer  |
| School  | Headmaster / headmistress                       | Student / Teacher   |
| science lab معمل العلوم                               | science teacher                                 | student colleague   |
| shoe shop محل أحذية                                   | shop assistant بائع                             | Customer/ buyer   |
| shoemaker's   | Shoemaker صانع الأحذية                          | Customer  |
| Shoe-repair shop محل تصليح أحذية                      | Shoemaker أسكافي                                | client  |
| Stadium الاستاد                                       | Booking clerk –coach –player-<br>shop assistant | spectator – announcer مذيع                                  |
| Stationery مكتبة بيع أدوات مكتبية                     | shop assistant                                  | Customer / buyer  |
| Street الشارع   | Police man – passer- by احد المارة              | Passenger - driver - traffic officer                        |
| supermarket   | shop assistant بائع                             | Customer / buyer / shopper                                  |
| surgey / clinic عيادة                                 | Surgeon جراح                                    | Patient   |
| Swimming pool حمام سباحه                              | Trainer   | swimmer سباح  |
| Tailor's  | Tailor ترضي                                     | Customer  |
| Taxi  | Driver  | passenger   |
| Telegram office مكتب تلغراف                           | Clerk   | citizen   |
| Telephone office مكتب تليفون                          | Operator عامل التليفون                          | client  |
| The customs office الجمارك                            | Customs clerk -موظف الجمرك-                     | passenger   |
| The pyramids  | Tourist guide                                   | tourist   |
| The underground المترو                                | Ticket clerk                                    | passenger   |
| Tourist site موقع اثرى                                | Tourist guide                                   | tourist   |
| Toy shop محل لعب                                      | Salesman  | Customer  |
| Train قطار  | Conductor -كمسارى- inspector                    | passenger   |
| Travel agency وكالة سفريات                            | Travel agent - وكيل سفريات - booking<br>clerk   | Customer - tourist – traveler -<br>passenger                |
| TV studio استديو تلفزيون<br>Radio studio استديو اذاعة | Interviewer - مجرى اللقاء - Director            | guest - ضيف - Camera man                                    |
| Upholsterer 's محل منجد                               | Upholsterer                                     | client  |
| video shop  | shop assistant                                  | customer  |
| Watchinhg tower برج مراقبة                            | Airport controller                              | pilot   |
| Watchmaker's  | Watchmaker الساعاتي                             | Customer  |
| Wedding party حفل زفاف                                | bride groom - - bride العروسة                   | Waiter – guest  |
| Zoo   | Zoo keeper - حارس الحديقة -                     | visitor زائر - handler سايس                                 |

### Functions

|                          |                    |                                   |                             |
|--------------------------|--------------------|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| Accepting advice         | قبول النصيحة       | Indifference                      | عدم الاكتراث                |
| Advising                 | النصيحة            | Inquiring                         | الاستفسار                   |
| Agreeing strongly        | الموافقة بقوة      | Intention                         | النية                       |
| Agreeing with an opinion | الموافقة علي رأي   | Introducing people                | تقديم الآخرين               |
| Anxiety                  | القلق              | Introducing yourself              | تقديم نفسك                  |
| Approval                 | استحسان            | Justifying your opinion           | تبرير الرأي                 |
| Ask and answer questions | سؤال و اجابة اسئلة | Late advise                       | النصيحة في الماضي           |
| Asking about the way     | السؤال عن الطريق   | Liking & disliking                | الحب & الكراهية             |
| Asking for an opinion    | طلب رأي            | Making a request                  | عمل طلب                     |
| Asking for information   | طلب معلومات        | Making a suggestion               | عمل اقتراح                  |
| Asking for information   | طلب معلومات        | Making an apology                 | عمل اعتذار                  |
| Asking for instructions  | طلب تعليمات        | Making an invitation              | عمل دعوة                    |
| Blaming someone          | اللوم علي شخص      | Making complaints                 | عمل شكوة                    |
| Certainty                | التأكد             | Making recommendations            | عمل توصية / تذكية           |
| Concession               | تنازل              | Meeting people after a long time  | مقابلة الناس بعد فترة طويلة |
| Congratulation           | التهنئة            | Meeting people for the first time | مقابلة الناس لأول مرة       |
| Contrasting ideas        | أفكار متناقضة      | Offering help                     | عرض المساعدة                |
| Declining                | الرفض              | On the phone                      | علي التليفون                |
| Deducing                 | الاستنتاج          | Permission                        | الأذن                       |

|                         |                      |                           |                        |
|-------------------------|----------------------|---------------------------|------------------------|
| Demanding explanations  | طلب ايضاح            | Persuading                | الاقناع                |
| Disagreeing strongly    | عدم الموافقة بقوة    | Persuading                | الاقناع                |
| Disappointment          | الاحباط / خيبة الامل | Polite remark             | عبارة مهذبة            |
| Encouragement           | التشجيع              | Predicting                | التنبؤ                 |
| Ensuring                | التأكيد              | Prediction                | التنبؤ                 |
| Exclamation!            | التعجب               | Presenting                | تقديم شئ               |
| Expressing sympathy     | التعبير عن المواساة  | Probability               | الاحتمالية             |
| Expressing admiration   | التعبير عن الاعجاب   | Reassuring                | التأكيد                |
| Expressing admiration   | التعبير عن الاعجاب   | Refusing advice           | رفض النصيحة            |
| Expressing anger        | التعبير عن الغضب     | Regret                    | الندم                  |
| Expressing complement   | التعبير عن المجاملة  | Rejecting something       | رفض شئ                 |
| Expressing displeasure  | عدم السرور           | Release from blame        | الاعفاء من اللوم       |
| Expressing fear         | التعبير عن الخوف     | Reminding                 | التذكير                |
| Expressing gratitude    | التعبير عن الامتنان  | Reply / response          | الرد                   |
| Expressing hope         | التعبير عن الامل     | Request / offer help      | طلب او عرض مساعدة      |
| Expressing pleasure     | التعبير عن السرور    | Saying goodbye            | الوداع                 |
| Expressing satisfaction | التعبير عن الرضا     | Saying you don't know     | القول بأننا لا نعرف    |
| Expressing surprise     | التعبير عن الدهشة    | Seeing someone off        | توديع شخص              |
| Expressing worry        | التعبير عن القلق     | Showing liking /disliking | التعبير عن حب   عدم حب |
| Forgiving               | التسامح / العفو      | Showing no care           | بيان عدم الاهتمام      |
| Giving a reason         | اعطاء سبب أو مبرر    | Showing responsibility    | ابداء مسنولية          |
| Giving Advice           | اعطاء نصيحة          | Stating possibility       | التعبير عن الاحتمالية  |
| Giving classification   | اعطاء تصنيف          | Stating preference        | التعبير عن ما نفضل     |
| Giving direction        | اعطاء اتجاهات        | Suspecting / doubt        | الشك                   |
| Giving instructions     | اعطاء تعليمات        | Thanking                  | الشكر                  |
| Giving opinion          | ابدا ء / اعطاء رأي   | Uncertainty               | عدم التأكد             |
| Giving Orders           | اعطاء أوامر          | Wanting                   | الرغبة                 |
| Greeting warmly         | التحية بدفء          | Warning                   | التحذير                |
| Greetings               | التحيات              | Well – wishing            | الامنية الجيدة         |
| Guessing                | التخمين              | Wishes                    | الامنية                |

2. Mention the place, the speakers and the language function in the following mini-dialogues:

### WB Exercises

1) A: So, John, could you tell our listeners how you started?

B: Certainly. It was when I was seven. I won first prize in a poetry competition. When I was a student, some of my stories were published in a university magazine. A: And now its your full time job?

B: That's right my second novel was published last year.

Place: ..... Speaker A: .....Speaker B: .....Function: .....

2) Ok, mum. Where shall I put it?

A: Just put the bags on the kitchen floor for the moment.

B: ok, mum .

Place: ..... Speaker A: .....Speaker B: .....Function: .....

B: At midday. We have still got lots of time.

Place: ..... Speaker A: .....Speaker B: .....Function: .....

4) A: So, for homework, I want you all to make a list of all the plants growing in your neighborhood.

B: Shall we just write the names of the plants? A: No, write the names and a short description.

Place: ..... Speaker A: .....Speaker B: .....Function: .....



5) A: Excuse me Sir. The captain has asked everyone to return to their seats.  
B: Does that mean we are going to land soon? A: Yes, in about fifteen minutes.

Place: ..... Speaker A: .....Speaker B: .....,.....Function: .....

6) A: Have you seen Tarek? B: No, sir. He was at his desk on the phone a few minutes ago.  
A: Is not he there now? B: No, may be he has gone home already.  
A: He can not have gone home. he is preparing a report for me.

Place: ..... Speaker A: .....Speaker B: .....,.....Function: .....

7) A: Is there anything I can do to help, miss Salma?  
B: Could you give these books back to the class after break?  
A: Yes, of course. Is that the homework we did last week?  
B: Yes, that is right. your homework was very good.

Place: ..... Speaker A: .....Speaker B: .....,.....Function: .....

8) A: Excuse me. I need to find out about modern farming in Egypt for a university project.  
B: All the information on agriculture is on the second floor.  
A: Thank you. Can I take any of the books out?  
B: Yes. Just bring them to the desk near the entrance.

Place: ..... Speaker A: .....Speaker B: .....,.....Function: .....

9) A: Do you remember what happened? B: No, I just remember waking up in the road.  
A: How do you fell now? B: Not too bad. Will I have to stay here tonight?  
A: We are not sure yet. We will have to check you have no broken bones.

Place: ..... Speaker A: .....Speaker B: .....,.....Function: .....

10) A: Could you tell us why you would like to study here?  
B: Your biology department has a very good reputation.  
A: And if we accept you, what do you hope to do when you graduate?  
A: Well, I would like to work for a food company.

Place: ..... Speaker A: .....Speaker B: .....,.....Function: .....

11) A: are you in your first year? B: yes, I am studying English, but it is not only my third week.  
A: my parents would like me to apply here. Would you recommend it? B: yes, definitely.

Place: ..... Speaker A: .....Speaker B: .....,.....Function: .....

B: that not great! When do I start?  
A: at the beginning of next month. You will be working at our Cairo branch.  
B: I am looking forward to starting.

Place: ..... Speaker A: .....Speaker B: .....,.....Function: .....

### *General Exercises on Speakers & Places*

2.Mention the place, the speakers and the language function in the following mini-dialogues:

1) A: May I take your order, sir? B: Yes, I'll have steak, please.  
A : How would you like it, sir ? B: Well done, please. A: Certainly, sir.

Place: ..... Speaker A: .....Speaker B: .....Function: .....

- 2) A ) I want to buy a new blouse . Could you give me advice about the latest fashion?  
B) With pleasure. Floral blouses are now the latest fashion. The colour red is the most fashionable.

Place: ..... Speaker A: .....Speaker B: .....Function: .....

- 3) A : What can I get for you?                      B : I prefer fish and watermelon as a dessert

Place: ..... Speaker A: .....Speaker B: .....Function: .....

- 4) -A: Our teacher asked us to read about pollution. Can you advise me about the best book to read?  
B : There are five books on that shelf on your right. A :I think the first one is the best.

Place: ..... Speaker A: .....Speaker B: .....Function: .....

- 5) A) Can I help you, madam?                      B: Yes, it's my car. It suddenly broke down.  
A: Where is it now?                                      B: About fifty metres from here. What about coming with me?

Place: ..... Speaker A: .....Speaker B: .....Function: .....

- 6) A: A car hit mine and broke its door.                      B: Have you got the number of the car?  
A: Taxi 37645.    B: O.K. We'll find the taxi-driver.

Place: ..... Speaker A: .....Speaker B: .....Function: .....

- 7) A: I'm fascinated by chemistry.  
B: That's good. You can join our research team in the field of bacteriology.  
A: Alright. Thanks for your advice.

Place: ..... Speaker A: .....Speaker B: .....Function: .....

- 8) A - Open your English books, please.                      B - Which page, sir?                      A : Page55.

Place: ..... Speaker A: .....Speaker B: .....Function: .....

- 9) A - Excuse me, what time is the next train?                      B- 8.30, platform 5.                      A - Thank you.

Place: ..... Speaker A: .....Speaker B: .....Function: .....

- 10) A - Can I get some information about restaurants, where I can have my meals?  
B - Certainly sir. What kind of restaurants?                      A - Not expensive ones, but not cheap either.

Place: ..... Speaker A: .....Speaker B: .....Function: .....

- 11- A- I'd like to withdraw 100 LE from my account no: 611  
B- Please fill in this form with your authorized signature

Place: ..... Speaker A: .....Speaker B: .....Function: .....

- 12-A-Would you bring me the bill, please.  
B- Of course. One cup of tea and two cheese sandwiches.This makes six pounds.

Place: ..... Speaker A: .....Speaker B: .....Function: .....

- 13- A-Good morning. Can I help you?

B-Yes, please. I want two tins of sardines, one kilo of rice and a packet of butter.

Place: ..... Speaker A: .....Speaker B: .....Function: .....

14-A-I'd like some envelopes and a bottle of blue ink. B-OK, Here you are. That will be five pounds.

Place: ..... Speaker A: .....Speaker B: .....Function: .....

15-A-Keep your eyes focused on me and smile. B-Can we take another shot. I'm sure I blinked.  
A- Of course. we can.

Place: ..... Speaker A: .....Speaker B: .....Function: .....

16-A-My ankle hurts me much. B-What happened?  
A-It was twisted while I was playing football.  
B-Please lie on this bed. I think it needs an x ray examination.

Place: ..... Speaker A: .....Speaker B: .....Function: .....

17- A- First of all, you switch on the ignition key. B- Ignition key, you said. What next?  
A-Adjust the mirror and press the accelerator

Place: ..... Speaker A: .....Speaker B: .....Function: .....

18-A- What size and colour do you take? B- Forty. I want them black with high heels.  
A- Please try these on.

Place: ..... Speaker A: .....Speaker B: .....Function: .....

19-A- Relax on this couch and try to think about your past life.  
B-I remember that I had a miserable childhood. I used to cry much; I hated to be left alone.

Place: ..... Speaker A: .....Speaker B: .....Function: .....

20-A- Good morning. Can I help you?  
B- Good morning. I've an appointment with the director concerning the vacant job.  
A- Yes, he is expecting you.

Place: ..... Speaker A: .....Speaker B: .....Function: .....

21-A- Hello. I'd like to speak to the principal, please.  
B- I'm sorry. The principal is busy now. Can I take your message?  
A- My son won't be able to come to school today.

Place: ..... Speaker A: .....Speaker B: .....Function: .....

22-A-.... and when I got home, I found it too small.  
B- When did you buy it? A- Two months ago.  
B- Oh, no, we have a rule that all shirts must be brought within two weeks if you want to change them

Place: ..... Speaker A: .....Speaker B: .....Function: .....

23- A- Try to avoid his left direct blows. Remember this is the sixth round. You are doing well.  
B- I'll be careful. I'll do my best to win.

Place: ..... Speaker A: .....Speaker B: .....Function: .....

24- A- Oh! What a lovely statue! Which statue is it B-Tot AnkhAoun. It is made of pure gold.  
A- Can I have a photo of it? B- No, Sir, this is not allowed.

Place: ..... Speaker A: .....Speaker B: .....Function: .....

25-A- This little monkey is cute. Can I feed it, Grandpa? B- Of course not. It may hurt you.

Place: ..... Speaker A: .....Speaker B: .....Function: .....

26-A- To day, we are going to find out whether oil dissolves in water. His is our first experiment.  
B- Excuse me, sir. Shall we heat the mixture?

Place: ..... Speaker A: .....Speaker B: .....Function: .....

27-A- Can you take me quickly to the airport, please? B- I'll do my best, sir. What time is your plane?

Place: ..... Speaker A: .....Speaker B: .....Function: .....

28-A-1 can't give you permission to leave today. B- Why not? I feel well now.  
A- I'm sorry your temperature is still high.

Place: ..... Speaker A: .....Speaker B: .....Function: .....

29- A-You are not in your best form. I can't risk making you play this match.  
B- Give me this chance, please. I'm sure I won't let you down this time.

Place: ..... Speaker A: .....Speaker B: .....Function: .....

30- A-Have you anything to declare? B- Only my personal belongings and some gifts.

Place: ..... Speaker A: .....Speaker B: .....Function: .....

31-A-I swear. I'll say the truth. B-Do you know this man behind the bars?  
A- Yes. I saw him stabbing my neighbour with a knife

Place: ..... Speaker A: .....Speaker B: .....Function: .....

32- A- Excuse me, Miss. What time will we reach London Airport, please?  
B-After ten minutes. Please, fasten your seat belt.

Place: ..... Speaker A: .....Speaker B: .....Function: .....

1 ) A : May I take your order, sir ? B: Yes, I'll have steak, please.  
33-A-Would you describe your bag, please? B-It's big and brown.  
A-Where did you lose it? B-In the Express Train coming from Alexandria.

Place: ..... Speaker A: .....Speaker B: .....Function: .....

34- A-Show me your driving license, please. B-Here you are.  
A-You have to pay a fine. You are not fastening your seat belt.

Place: ..... Speaker A: .....Speaker B: .....Function: .....

35-A-The goal you scored was wonderful. B-Thank you  
A-Can I ask you some questions? I'll write about you in the Sports Magazine tomorrow

Place: ..... Speaker A: .....Speaker B: .....Function: .....

36- A-Let me see your ticket, please. B-Here you are.  
A-Your seat is in the front, second row. B- Thank you. When will the play start?

Place: ..... Speaker A: .....Speaker B: .....Function: .....

37-A-I'm enjoying it very much. Mummy. The acrobats and the clowns are very funny.  
B-I'm glad you like it. We'll come again next weekend.

Place: ..... Speaker A: .....Speaker B: .....Function: .....

38-A- How would you like your hair to be? B-Don't make it too short, only trimming.

Place: ..... Speaker A: .....Speaker B: .....Function: .....

39- A- Hello is this 0125165442 ? B- Yes . Can I help you?  
A- I want to inquire about your flat. Is it still available?

Place: ..... Speaker A: .....Speaker B: .....Function: .....

40- A- How lovely they are! Please give me one bunch of roses. B- of course , sir. 20 pounds.

Place: ..... Speaker A: .....Speaker B: .....Function: .....

41)A : Could you carry these bags to my car, please? It's outside the airport.  
B : I certainly will. Welcome to Cairo, sir.

Place: ..... Speaker A: .....Speaker B: .....Function: .....

B: Yes, smoking is not allowed here. In hospitals smoking is dangerous to patients and to you too.

Place: ..... Speaker A: .....Speaker B: .....Function: .....

43) A: I'm calling about the flat for rent, advertised in Al-Ahram today. Is it still available?  
B: Yes, you can come and see it at any time from 6 p.m. to 9 p.m.

Place: ..... Speaker A: .....Speaker B: .....Function: .....

44) A: How do you want the beef-steak, sir, medium or well-done? B: Well-done, please.

Place: ..... Speaker A: .....Speaker B: .....Function: .....

45) A : Do you like your tea with milk and sugar? B: Yes, but quickly, please.

Place: ..... Speaker A: .....Speaker B: .....Function: .....

46) A: Have you understood the new lesson? B: Yes, thank you. It is clear.  
A: The bell rang so you can leave now. B: Thank you.

Place: ..... Speaker A: .....Speaker B: .....Function: .....

47) A: I do hope you get well again. I think it was a bad accident, but doctors and nurses here are doing their best.  
B: Thank you for your kind visit. I do feel well now.

Place: ..... Speaker A: .....Speaker B: .....Function: .....

48) A: I didn't find my briefcase when I returned to my room.  
B: We found a briefcase in the hotel restaurant. I think it is yours. Here it is. A: Thanks.

Place: ..... Speaker A: .....Speaker B: .....Function: .....

49) A: Is this the right bus to Heliopolis? B: Yes, sit down, and I'll tell you to get off at the right stop

Place: ..... Speaker A: .....Speaker B: .....Function: .....

50) A: Could you get me to Cairo University by ten thirty? I'm very late.

B: Yes, of course. I'll do my best although the road is too crowded.

B: All the information on agriculture is on the second shelf over there.

Place: ..... Speaker A: .....Speaker B: .....Function: .....

51-A- Relax on this couch and try to think about your past life.

B- I remember that I had a miserable childhood. I used to cry much; I hated to be left alone.

Place: ..... Speaker A: .....Speaker B: .....Function: .....

52- A- Good morning. Can I help you?

B- Good morning. I've an appointment the vacant job.

A- Yes, The manager is expecting you.

Place: ..... Speaker A: .....Speaker B: .....Function: .....

53- A- Hello. I'd like to speak to the principal, please.

B- I'm sorry. The principal is busy now. Can I take your message?

A- My son won't be able to come to school today.

Place: ..... Speaker A: .....Speaker B: .....Function: .....

54- A-.. and when I got home, I found it too small. B- When did you buy it? A- Two months ago.

B- Oh, no, we have a rule that all shirts must be brought within two weeks if you want to change them

Place: ..... Speaker A: .....Speaker B: .....Function: .....

55- A- Try to avoid his left direct blows. Remember this is the six round. You are doing well.

B- I'll be careful. I'll do my best to win.

Place: ..... Speaker A: .....Speaker B: .....Function: .....

56- A- Oh! What a lovely statue! Which statue is it B-Tot AnkhAmoun. It is made of pure gold.

A- Can I have a photo of it?

B- No, Sir, this is not allowed.

Place: ..... Speaker A: .....Speaker B: .....Function: .....

57-A- This little monkey is cute. Can I feed it? Grandpa. B- Of course not. It may hurt you.

Place: ..... Speaker A: .....Speaker B: .....Function: .....

58-A- To day, we are going to find out whether oil dissolves in water. His is our first experiment.

B- Excuse me, sir. Shall we heat the mixture?

Place: ..... Speaker A: .....Speaker B: .....Function: .....

59-A- Can you take me quickly to the airport, please? B- I'll do my best, sir. What time is your plane?

Place: ..... Speaker A: .....Speaker B: .....Function: .....

60-A-1 can't give you permission to leave today.

B- Why not? I feel well now.

A- I'm sorry your temperature is still high.

Place: ..... Speaker A: .....Speaker B: .....Function: .....

61- A-You are not in your best form. I can't risk making you play this match.

B-Give me this chance, please. I'm sure I won't let you down this time.

Place: ..... Speaker A: .....Speaker B: .....Function: .....

62-A-Have you anything to declare? B-Only my personal belongings and some gifts.

Place: ..... Speaker A: .....Speaker B: .....Function: .....

63-A-I swear. I'll say the truth. B-Do you know this man behind the bars?

A-Yes. I saw him stabbing my neighbour with a knife.

Place: ..... Speaker A: .....Speaker B: .....Function: .....

64-A-Excuse me. Miss. What time will we reach London Airport, please?

B-After ten minutes. Please, fasten your seat belt.

Place: ..... Speaker A: .....Speaker B: .....Function: .....

65) A: Good morning, Mr. Mohamed. Please sit down. First of all, could you tell me why you are interested in working for us?

B: Well, I've done this kind of work before and I have always enjoyed working with people.

Place: ..... Speaker A: .....Speaker B: .....Function: .....

66) A : Hello. I'd like to join, please. I'm particularly interested in basketball and football.

B : Do you have any friends who already belong here?

A : Yes, three or four of my school friends are members.

B : OK. Could you tell me your name and age, please?

Place: ..... Speaker A: .....Speaker B: .....Function: .....

67) A : Good afternoon. Welcome to Radio 9 and today's World of Science.

B : Thanks. It's good to be here.

A : I wonder if you could introduce today's subject to our listeners.

B : Well, I'm going to talk about the research I've been doing recently.

Place: ..... Speaker A: .....Speaker B: .....Function: .....

68) A : I'm sure our listeners would like to hear how you first became interested in heart surgery.

B : Well, my father was a surgeon so I grew up watching him save people's lives.

A: And why do you continue to work today, even though you can take lots of time off?

B : Well, I believe that I can really make a difference in people's lives.

A : Well that's all we have time for. Thank you very much.

Place: ..... Speaker A: .....Speaker B: .....Function: .....

69) A : Welcome to this famous Egyptian site. It was built by Salah El Din Al Ayyoubi.

B : When was it built? A : It was built in 1176. It was built to protect Cairo from enemies.

Place: ..... Speaker A: .....Speaker B: .....Function: .....

70) A: When exactly do you want to travel? B: I have to leave on June 17. I'd like two tickets, please.

A: OK, there's a flight at 14.55 on the seventeenth.

Place: ..... Speaker A: .....Speaker B: .....Function: .....

71) A : You're working very hard this evening, Ali.  
B : Yes, I've got an important test tomorrow.  
A : Well, don't go to bed too late. You don't want to be tired for your test.

Place: ..... Speaker A: .....Speaker B: .....Function: .....

72) A : We learned about giant pandas at school last year; do you remember?  
B : Yes, but I don't really like seeing them in cages like this.  
A : It's not easy to see them in China though, is it?

Place: ..... Speaker A: .....Speaker B: .....Function: .....

73) A : Passport and tickets, please. B : Here you are-  
A : Window or aisle seat? B : Window seat, please.  
A : I've given you a window seat. 24A. Boarding will be at 10 o'clock from Gate 17.

Place: ..... Speaker A: .....Speaker B: .....Function: .....

74) A : Which tooth seems to have a problem?  
B : The one at the front left. It always hurts when I chew on it.  
A : Right. Would you open your mouth, please? Yes, it seems you have a slight problem.

Place: ..... Speaker A: .....Speaker B: .....Function: .....

75) A: May I have your attention, please? I hope you are enjoying the beautiful views of the Sinai desert. We'll soon be arriving at the monastery of St Catherine.  
B: When was the monastery built?  
A: It was built in the sixth century by the Roman Emperor Justinian. B: Thank you.

Place: ..... Speaker A: .....Speaker B: .....Function: .....

76) A : Your tickets, please, sir. B : Here you are. What time do we arrive at Banha?  
A : In half an hour or so. B : Will we stop at Tanta?  
A : No. We are going straight to Alexandria after that.

Place: ..... Speaker A: .....Speaker B: .....Function: .....

77) A: So, you want to borrow L.E. 200,000. What do you want the money for?  
B- I want to buy some more land. Thus, I can expand my business.  
A: Well, we can certainly lend you the money, but we'll need to see a business plan. You need to show us that you can pay the money back within the next five years.

Place: ..... Speaker A: .....Speaker B: .....Function: .....

78) A: Hello! Can I help you, sir? B: Yes, I'd like to have a single room, please.  
A: With or without a bathroom B: With a bathroom

Place: ..... Speaker A: .....Speaker B: .....Function: .....

79) A: How was your flight, sir? B: Excellent ! A: Welcome back to Egypt.

Place: ..... Speaker A: .....Speaker B: .....Function: .....

80) A: May I get in, sir? B: You are late. A: Sorry, sir I won't be late again.

Place: ..... Speaker A: .....Speaker B: .....Function: .....



81) A : Why are you throwing this rubbish here?      B : Well, what would you like me to do with it?  
A : You should put it in the garbage bin.

Place: ..... Speaker A: .....Speaker B: .....Function: .....

82) A : Excuse me, do you have these trousers in a large size?  
B : Just one moment, madam, I'll check.

Place: ..... Speaker A: .....Speaker B: .....Function: .....

83 ) A: Can I see your driving licence, please?                      B: What for?  
A: You have parked in a no-parking area.

Place: ..... Speaker A: .....Speaker B: .....Function: .....

84 ) A: Please, fasten your seat belt.      B: Are we about to land?      A: Yes, in a few minutes.

Place: ..... Speaker A: .....Speaker B: .....Function: .....

85) A: I'd like to change some money, please.      B: Certainly, sir. Cash or traveler's cheques?  
A: Traveller's cheques.      B: That's fine, sir. Please sign the cheques and show me your passport.

Place: ..... Speaker A: .....Speaker B: .....Function: .....

86) A: On which platform is the train to Aswan?      B: Platform No.5.  
A: May you help me with my bags?                      B: With pleasure.

Place: ..... Speaker A: .....Speaker B: .....Function: .....

87) A: It's good that you have got a mobile phone with you. Let's phone the police about the diver.  
B: Yes, he hit the old man and ran away.

Place: ..... Speaker A: .....Speaker B: .....Function: .....

88) A: Excuse me, I'm looking for some information about festivals around the world for my English class.  
B: There are some books about festivals in the cultural section over there.

Place: ..... Speaker A: .....Speaker B: .....Function: .....

89) A: I come from England.                                      B: Are you coming for work?  
A: Yes, I have some work near Siwa.  
B: Enjoy your stay. Don't forget to take some dates with you to England.

Place: ..... Speaker A: .....Speaker B: .....Function: .....

90) A: I'll bring my tools and come to your house to fix the pump.      B: Thanks a lot, I'll be waiting.

Place: ..... Speaker A: .....Speaker B: .....Function: .....

91) A: I got to grips with the instructions for the new video player.  
B: I'm sure you would be very pleased as you use our products.      A: Thanks a lot for your help.

Place: ..... Speaker A: .....Speaker B: .....Function: .....

92) A: Can I buy couples of coloured birds?      B: Of course, after you fill in a form and pay the price.  
A: Where?    B: At the zoo manager's office on your left.

Place: ..... Speaker A: .....Speaker B: .....Function: .....

93) A: I'd like to deposit L.E 2.000 to my saving account, please.  
B: With pleasure, but first fill in this form.

Place: ..... Speaker A: .....Speaker B: .....Function: .....

94) A: What time will you be checking out tomorrow?  
B: I'd like a 6:00 am wake-up call because I have to leave early to catch my flight.  
A: I hope you have enjoyed your stay with us. B: Yes, I have. Thank you.

Place: ..... Speaker A: .....Speaker B: .....Function: .....

95) A: What's wrong with you? B: I have a great pain in my bones and I have a sore throat.

Place: ..... Speaker A: .....Speaker B: .....Function: .....

96) A: Where have you been all this time? B: I accompanied my father to Siwa where he works.  
A: What is his job? B: He is an archaeologist.

Place: ..... Speaker A: .....Speaker B: .....Function: .....

97) A: What can I get for you? B: I prefer fish and watermelon as a dessert.

Place: ..... Speaker A: .....Speaker B: .....Function: .....

98) A: Can I help you, madam? B: Yes. My car suddenly broke down.  
A: Where is it now? B: About fifty meters from here.

Place: ..... Speaker A: .....Speaker B: .....Function: .....

99) A: A car hit mine and broke its door. B: Have you got the number of the car?  
A: A taxi 1234567. B. Ok. We will find the taxi-driver.

Place: ..... Speaker A: .....Speaker B: .....Function: .....

100) A: I'm fascinated by chemistry.  
B: That's good. You can join our research team in the field of bacteriology.  
A: Alright. Thanks for your advice.

Place: ..... Speaker A: .....Speaker B: .....Function: .....

101) A: Silence. please. He has just been operated on. B: I'm awfully sorry.

Place: ..... Speaker A: .....Speaker B: .....Function: .....

102) A: I'd like to have a cup of coffee. B: How do you like it? A: With little sugar, please.

Place: ..... Speaker A: .....Speaker B: .....Function: .....

103) A: Good morning, madam. Can I help you?  
B: Yes, please. I'd like to get a new passport. What can I do?  
A: Please, fill in this form and bring two photos. You also pay 150 pounds.

Place: ..... Speaker A: .....Speaker B: .....Function: .....

104) A: It's very kind of you to bring me such lovely flowers.  
B: Not at all. I hope you get better soon. And leave here.

Place: ..... Speaker A: .....Speaker B: .....Function: .....

105) A: May I book a tour to Hurghada? B: With pleasure. How would you like to go?  
A: By plane because it's fast.

Place: ..... Speaker A: .....Speaker B: .....Function: .....

106) A: You have to pay a fine. B: Why? A: You exceeded the speed limit.

Place: ..... Speaker A: .....Speaker B: .....Function: .....

107) A: Excuse me, I'm interested in buying this skirt .How much is it?  
B: The price is LE 250. A: This is really expensive. It's unbelievable.  
B: But all our prices are fixed.

Place: ..... Speaker A: .....Speaker B: .....Function: .....

108) A: How much is a kilo of apples? B: It's 20 pounds. A: I'd like two kilos, please.

Place: ..... Speaker A: .....Speaker B: .....Function: .....

109) A: Thank you for rescuing me. I could have died.  
B: You're going to be OK. This oxygen mask will help you breathe? A: Where are we going?  
B: We're on our way to Kasr Al Ainil Hospital. The doctors will take care of you there.

Place: ..... Speaker A: .....Speaker B: .....Function: .....

110)A: Do you have any vacancies for full-time staff? B: What about your past Experience?  
A: Just one year experience. B: I can't promise anything, but I'll do my best.

Place: ..... Speaker A: .....Speaker B: .....Function: .....

112) A: How old is this mummy? B: It's about 4000 years old.

Place: ..... Speaker A: .....Speaker B: .....Function: .....

113) A: Could you show me a good mobile phone?  
B: We've a variety of the latest models with great features.

Place: ..... Speaker A: .....Speaker B: .....Function: .....

114) A: Have you got anything to declare? B: Only my personal belongings and some gifts.

Place: ..... Speaker A: .....Speaker B: .....Function: .....

115) A: Are there any planes to Zurich tomorrow? B: I'll have a look in the timetable for you.  
A: I'll need an economy class, open return.  
B: Swissair الخطوط الجوية السويسرية DC-9 out of Cairo at 0920.

Place: ..... Speaker A: .....Speaker B: .....Function: .....

116) A: Excuse me, madam. May I have a look inside your handbag, please? B: What for?  
A: It's only security measures before boarding a plane.

Place: ..... Speaker A: .....Speaker B: .....Function: .....

117) A: Please keep your cool. B: What's up?  
A: There're some hijackers مختطفون , and we have to head for Somalia.

Place: ..... Speaker A: .....Speaker B: .....Function: .....

118) A: Have the instruments been sterilized? B: Yes, of course.  
A: Has the patient been prepared? B: Certainly.  
A: Then he should be operated on at once.

Place: ..... Speaker A: .....Speaker B: .....Function: .....

119) A: I have insomnia and I want something which would help me sleep.  
B: I'm sorry; such drugs can't be sold without a prescription from a doctor.

Place: ..... Speaker A: .....Speaker B: .....Function: .....

120) A: I swear I'll say the truth and nothing but the truth.  
B: Do you know this man behind the bars? A: Yes. I saw him stabbing my neighbour with a knife.

Place: ..... Speaker A: .....Speaker B: .....Function: .....

121) A: I'd like six passport-sized photographs. B: Ok, sir. Please have a seat.  
A: When can I have them developed? B: In two hours' time.

Place: ..... Speaker A: .....Speaker B: .....Function: .....

122) A: Can I have these trousers taken in at waist?  
B: Sure. Let me take the measurement of your waist.

Place: ..... Speaker A: .....Speaker B: .....Function: .....

123) A: Oh! It's frightening. B: Don't be afraid. It's in the cage.  
A: Please, can I give him some food? B: You can, but be cautious.

Place: ..... Speaker A: .....Speaker B: .....Function: .....

124) A: I'd like it to be the best of all the dresses I've ever worn.  
B: OK, but please give me some more time. A: No problem. When can I come to try it on?

Place: ..... Speaker A: .....Speaker B: .....Function: .....

125) A: How about these earrings and necklace? B: Woo! They are fantastic. How heavy are they?  
A: They are fifty grams

Place: ..... Speaker A: .....Speaker B: .....Function: .....

126) A: I'd like to buy a tennis racket. B: Here you are. A: How much is it? B: 200 pounds.

Place: ..... Speaker A: .....Speaker B: .....Function: .....

127) A: The airport please. B: OK, that's 50 pounds.  
A: No problem. Could you go a little faster?" B: Sorry, I can't. There're restrictions on speed.

Place: ..... Speaker A: .....Speaker B: .....Function: .....

128) A: Next time, I'll send you off. B: Why? A: For your deliberate fouls. B: I'm sorry.

Place: ..... Speaker A: .....Speaker B: .....Function: .....

129) A: How shall I cut it, sir? B; Very short all over, please.

Place: ..... Speaker A: .....Speaker B: .....Function: .....

130) A: Can I still get tickets for tonight's show?

B: You can sit wherever you like in the second row

A: When does the play start?

Place: ..... Speaker A: .....Speaker B: .....Function: .....

131) A: How can I help you, Sir? B: I'd like to book a double room, please. A: At your disposal sir.

Place: ..... Speaker A: .....Speaker B: .....Function: .....

132) A: Look out!

B: What's up?

A: You nearly rammed the car in front.

B: Thank goodness. It was a close call.

Place: ..... Speaker A: .....Speaker B: .....Function: .....

### 3 - Reading Comprehension

#### القراءة و الفهم

#### كيفة التعامل مع قطعة الفهم :

ليس هناك طريقة معينة يمكن الاعتماد عليها للتعامل مع قطع الفهم ولكن التدريب المكثف ، بالإضافة الي الثروة اللغوية - هم أفضل الوسائل وأنجحها للتمكن من هذا السؤال وإجادته واضعين في الاعتبار التالي:

- 1- إقرأ الأسئلة الواردة على القطعة وهذا يبين لك ما تدور حوله القطعة ويحدد لك المعلومات التي ستبحث عنها لاحقاً.
- 2- إقرأ القطعة ولا تشغل بالك كثيراً بالمفردات أو الجمل الصعبة والغير واضحة الواردة في القطعة. فالمفردات الصعبة واردة لا شك..... وما يلزمك هو فهم المعنى العام وتطويع المفردات حسب موضوع القطعة لأن الكلمة يتغير معناها حسب السياق الواردة فيه. مع استخدام القدرة على التخمين.
- وقد تجد إيضاح لكلمة صعبة واردة في قطعة ما في العبارة التالية لها فمثلاً فقد وردت لفظة "the namaste" وهي لفظة صعبة ومعناها التصافح باليد في امتحان 2003 مرحلة أولى تبعها الإيضاح التالي:  
"Placing your two palms together with fingers pointed upwards"  
والمهارة هنا معرفة المعنى العام دون التوقف عند لفظ بعينه.
- 3- وتنقسم أسئلة القطعة العادية comprehension إلى نوعين:  
الأول : وهنا يمكنك أن تكتب الإجابة بأسلوب القطعة أو أسلوبك الخاص أو الجمع بينهما .  
الثاني: هو سؤال الاختياري وهنا عليك أن تكتب الإجابة المختارة فقط وتتطلب الإجابة على هذا السؤال مهارة عالية في الفهم والتركيز  
" قبل اختيار الإجابة الصحيحة تأكد أن الاختيارات الأخرى غير صحيحة بالمرّة."
- 4- تمهل في استخلاص الإجابة من القطعة فقد تكون إجابة السؤال الأول في الفقرة الثانية وليس شرطاً أن تكون في الفقرة الأولى.
- 5- اكتب الإجابة الصحيحة فقط ولا تزيد لأن الزيادات المبالغ فيها والغير مطلوبة تقلل من الدرجة التي يضعها المصحح.
- 6- التزم بالبناء السليم للجملة من حيث الزمن والضمان وغيره
- 7- أفضل كل إجابة عن الأخرى بوضع خط بالقلم الرصاص
- 8 - تأكد من فهم السؤال ولا تتعجل وتذكر أن فهم السؤال يعادل نصف الإجابة.
- 9- راعى القواعد العامة في الكتابة من علامات ترقيم وخلافه واجتهد في تحسين الخط.

#### Reading Passages from previous Exams

#### نماذج قطع الفهم من الأمتحانات السابقة

#### 1. Read the passage then answer the following questions:-

People may be divided into two types: winners and losers. Because our families and friends have a great influence on us as we grow, we are born helpless and dependent on our environment. Winners are able to change their situation and become independent by being responsible for their own lies. They don't blame others for their mistakes. They do their own thinking, they listen to others, evaluate what they say, and then they make up their minds. Although they may fail at times, yet they keep self-confidence. Winners overcome their bad experiences. They enjoy work, play, food and the world of nature.

They freely enjoy themselves but they can postpone it if duty calls. Losers, on the other hand never learn to take responsibility for their own lives. There are many causes why people can become losers: disease, poor nutrition, cruelty, unhappy relationships and bad experiences. *These* can interfere with the normal progress towards becoming a winner. But whereas winners fight theses situations, losers hang on to them, and use them as excuses. Losers usually feel anxious, unhappy and bored. They are afraid to try new things and often repeat their own mistakes again and again.

Losers spend their lives waiting for something wonderful to happen to save them from their problems with their lives but never try to change.

a) Answer the following questions:

- 1- What determines the life of the winners?
- 2- What does the underlined word (these) refer to?
- 3- Give a suitable title to the passage?
- 4- Find in the text words which mean :

a) To put off until a later time

b) To get in the way of

b) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

5- When winners fail at times, they -----

- a) *are afraid to try new things*      b) *never keep their self – confidence*  
c) *spend their time waiting*      d) *never repeat their own mistakes*

6- Losers are people who -----

- a) *blame others for their mistakes*      b) *overcome their bad experiences*  
c) *learn to take responsibility*      d) *try to change*

7- Winners can change their own lives by -----

- a) *blaming others for their mistakes*      b) *using their mistakes as excuses*  
c) *waiting for something wonderful*      d) *being responsible for their own lives*

**2. Read the passage then answer the following questions:-**

Did you think of money? Is it important to us or not? Aristotle, the Greek philosopher, summed up the four chief qualities of money some 2000 years ago. It must be lasting and easy to recognize, to divide, and to carry. This means it must be, “durable, distinct, divisible and portable?”. When we think of money today, we picture it either as round, flat pieces of metal, which we call coins or as printed paper notes. But there are still parts of the world today where coins and notes are of no use. They will buy nothing, and a traveller might starve if he had none of the particular local “ money “ to exchange for food .

Among isolated people, who are not often reached by traders from outside commerce usually means *barter*. This is a direct exchange for pots, baskets, or other manufactured goods. For this kind of trading, money is not needed, but there is often something that everyone wants and everybody can use, such as salt to flavour food, shells for ornaments, or iron and copper to make into tools and vessels. These things:

Salt, shells or metals are still used as money in some primitive parts of the world today.

a) Answer the following questions:

- 1- Which of the four qualities of money, do you think, is the most essential?
- 2- How would you describe money at present?
- 3- What does the underlined word (*barter*) mean?
- 4- Give a suitable title for the passage?

b) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

5- In some isolated parts of the world money is -----

- a) *needed for trading*      b) *not needed for trading*  
c) *needed for buying thing*      d) *wanted as coins or paper notes*

6- In some parts of the world today where coins and notes are of no use we can -----

- a) *exchange goods*      b) *use local money only*      c) *use any other money*      d) *buy nothing*

7- According to the passage, everyone in the isolated parts needs -----

- a) *only salt to flavour food*      b) *iron and copper to make into tools*  
c) *salt , shells , iron and copper*      d) *tools and vessels*

**3. Read the passage then answer the following questions:-**

One day, I was standing outside an underground station in London waiting for a friend, when I saw two men. One was sitting on the pavement. His clothes were old and dirty and had a hat in front of him. As people passed by, he said, “Can you give me some change, please? “ A few people tossed some coins into the hat but most people ignored him.

The other man was wearing a suit and holding plastic petrol can. He stopped people and told them his car had run out of petrol and he had forgotten his wallet. He asked them to lend him some money for petrol. Most people happily gave him money. Some gave him coins, but most gave him notes. I watched him for ten minutes. In that time he collected a lot of money. He put it in his pocket, but he did not go to the petrol station. It became clear to me that both men were beggars. The one in the dirty clothes needed money more than one in the suit. But the one in the suit was much more successful. Isn't that strange?

a) Answer the following questions:

- 1- Why was the writer standing outside the station?

- 2- Which man collected the most money?
- 3- Did the man in the suit really have a car which had run out of petrol?
- 4- What does the pronoun “it “in bold refer to?

b ) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 5- “Most people ignored him “means people -----  
a) *shouted at him*    b) *refused to give any money*  
c) *walked past without looking at him*                  d) *moved quickly*
- 6- People ----- the second man’s story.  
a) *didn’t believe*                  b) *believed*                  c) *doubted*                  d) *knew*
- 7- The man in the suit asked people to ----- him money.  
a) *take*                          b) *borrow*                          c) *spend*                          d) *lend*

**4. Read the passage then answer the following questions:-**

The neighbours closest to my house are my favourite people. The man is a retired army officer and his wife still working for the nearby university. They are very hospitable and usually invite their friends to lunch. It is particularly enjoyable to wake up a Friday morning to the sounds of their music playing which are really quite artistic. However, I also love to hear them laughing when they make a mistake in their music playing. Besides music, carpentry is still man’s main interest, and most days he is outside in his work space in the garden, making an artistic piece of furniture.

My neighbours are ideal to live next door, too, because they can very helpful if I need them. I respect them as they never interfere in my private life and I behave with them in the same way. We have helped each other with numerous emergencies such as fire and car accidents. We also co-operate with each other in little ways such as bringing the mail, when one of us is away. We sometimes meet when they invite me over for coffee, with some of their friends who are usually very interesting people: poets, painters, professors and other lively persons whom I enjoy meeting. Sometimes we go to the fireworks display. Apart from this, we simply live next door to each other peacefully, side by side.

a) Answer the following questions:

- 1- Give one reason why the writer likes his neighbours.
- 2- What hobbies do the writer’s neighbours practice?
- 3- Why does the write respect his neighbours?
- 4- Why the writer’s are neighbours ideal?

b) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 5- The underlined word “usually “means -----  
a) *always*                          b) *never*                          c) *seldom*                          d) *many times*
- 6- At the neighbours’ house, the write meets -----  
a) *interesting people*    b) *uninteresting people*  
c) *soldiers and artists only*                                  d) *officers and professors only*
- 7- The underlined words “little ways “refer to -----  
a) *short roads*                          b) *not long streets*                          c) *personal business*                          d) *simple services offered*

**5. Read the passage then answer the following questions:-**

Amal and Hassan, a newly married couple, were poor. Hassan’s wage enough to rent only a very small flat. But there were two things of which each was proud ! Amal had the longest and most beautiful hair and Hassan possessed a magnificent gold pocket-watch, given to him by his father. Amal always noticed sadly, when he looked at this watch fixed to the buttonhole of his coat by a common old leather strap. He really needed a gold chain. Hassan often thought if only he could buy her a jeweled comb to hold her long hair in place.

Now, it was the feast, Hassan and Amal began to think what present they could afford to give each other. Amal had a wonderful idea. She ran down the street to the shop with the notice : “ Hair bought “ . She entered and an hour later walked out of the shop richer by five hundred dollar but without her hair. She bought a chain to suit Hassan’s watch and wrapped it in a piece of coloured paper.

When Hassan saw her hair, he was speechless. Amal cried, “It will grow again very quickly”. I had to sell it buy your present. She produced the parcel from behind her back. Opening it laughed until tears came into his eyes. He had sold his watch to buy a jeweled comb for her hair. Amal smiled and said. “Ours are the best feast presents in the world “.

a) Answer the following questions:

- 1- Show that Hassan and Amal led a hard life?
- 2- What did Amal’s sacrifice show?
- 3- Why was Hassan deeply moved?
- 4- Give a title to the passage.

b) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

5- Amal sold her hair ----- the feast.

- a) *exactly on*                      b) *one day before*      c) *two days*                      d) *one day after*

6- When Hassan saw Amal without her long hair he felt -----

- a) *happy*                      b) *angry*                      c) *shocked*                      d) *ashamed*

7- The underlined word "It" refers to -----

- a) *Hassan's watch*                      b) *Amal's hair*      c) *the feast*                      d) *the chain*

**6. Read the passage then answer the following questions:-**

It was the end of the summer holiday and Nadia was worried. She had still not done her homework. Nadia had missed the day of school because she had been ill . She had phoned her friend Azza and asked what homework their teacher had set for the summer holiday. Azza had told her that teacher had asked them to write a composition. Nadia had written down the title. It was "The best things in life are three "

Nadia didn't know what to write. When she thought about the best things in life, they didn't seem to be " three " at all . She thought about her parents. There were two of them. Her brothers and sisters, there were four of them. She thought about happiness, love, nature. She couldn't count these at all. On the first day school, Nadia's teacher asked her to read her composition to the class. Nadia stood up and began. "I don't think the best things in life are three at all, "she said. " I think they are things you can't count "The other students stated to laugh. " Nadia "said her teacher gently. " The title of the composition was: The best things in life are free. "

a) Answer the following questions:

- 1- Why wasn't Nadia at school when the teacher set the homework?
- 2- Why did the rest of the class laugh when Nadia started to read her composition?
- 3- What does the word "It" in the first paragraph refers to?
- 4- Do you agree that the best things in life are free? Why?

b) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

5- Nadia communicated with Azza by -----

- a) *phone*                      b) *letter*                      c) *e-mail*                      d) *message*

6- Nadia's teacher was ----- with Nadia.

- a) *happy*                      b) *pleased*                      c) *angry*                      d) *worried*

7- Nadia disagreed with the title of the composition because -----

- a) *She wrote it down wrongly*                      b) *She couldn't count the best things in life*  
c) *She didn't want to write the composition*                      d) *She didn't have time to write the composition.*

**7. Read the passage then answer the following questions:-**

Your goal is something that you want to do. First you should decide what that goal is. Do you want to pass an exam? Do you want to be a doctor? Do you want to be wealthy? Think about what you want and decide on your goal. You should write your goal on a piece of paper. Put your goal poster on your wall and look at it everyday. Then decide what you have to do to achieve your goal.

Some people never reach their goal because they think it is impossible. You should think positively. Don't think "the exam is difficult and I will probably fail it, "instead you should think "The exam is difficult, but I have worked hard and will pass it ". People who think negatively seldom reach their goals, so be positive!

We are most successful at things we enjoy. So you should try to enjoy your work. Look at your goal poster. Think how happy you will be when you have reached your goal. Think about that happiness while you are working and you will enjoy your work.

a) Answer the following questions:

- 1- What is a goal ?
- 2- What does the underlined word (it) refer to?
- 3- How can you learn to enjoy your work?
- 4- Do you agree with the advice of the writer?

b) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

5- The best title for the passage is -----

- a) *How to be a doctor*                      b) *Three ways to reach your goal*  
c) *The best way to pass an exam*                      d) *How to make a goal poster*

6- "You should think positively "mean that you should "-----

- a) *realize that it is difficult to reach your goal*                      b) *work harder*  
c) *be confident and optimistic*                      d) *learn to take responsibility*

7- The opposite of positive is -----

- a) *negative*                      b) *responsive*                      c) *relative*                      d) *possessive*



**8. Read the passage then answer the following questions:-**

Scientists believe that there is a number of reasons for climatic changes. One reason could be the changes in the amount of heat which actually comes from the sun at different times. Another could be volcanic dust. People have also been adding gases such as carbon dioxide to the atmosphere. These are called greenhouses because they hang in the atmosphere around the Earth like the roof and walls of a greenhouse. The Earth receives heat and light from the sun sends this back into space as infrared radiation. Much of this radiation cannot pass through the greenhouse gases and this causes increased temperatures near the Earth.

The amount of carbon dioxide in the atmosphere is increasing mainly because all countries burn fossil fuels such as oil, natural gas and coal. The destruction of the big rain forests, which absorb carbon dioxide and give out oxygen, makes matters worse.

What can be done to prevent this situation? Global warming is a problem that affects every country and every person in the world. First of all, all governments must agree to stop the destruction of the world's rain forests. Secondly, they must agree to reduce the amount of carbon dioxide that transport and industries emit into the atmosphere. And we can all play a part as individuals. We should all try to reduce the amount of carbon dioxide we emit into the atmosphere. This can be done by driving fuel- efficient cars. The best way people can help is to use public transport as much as possible instead of their cars. And finally, we should plant more trees in the cities and on farms to give us back the air we need.

**a) Answer the following questions:**

- 1- What are the reasons for climatic changes?
- 2- What does the underlined word this refers to?
- 3- Why does the amount of carbon dioxide increase in the atmosphere?
- 4- Give a title to the passage?

**b) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

5- If the amount of carbon dioxide doubles, the average temperature will -----

- a) decrease      b) reduce      c) increase      d) raise

6- To help, people can use -----

- a) their private cars      b) their old buses      c) private cars and bicycles      d) public transport

7- Trees are important because they -----

- a) take in oxygen and produce carbon dioxide      b) absorb infrared radiation  
c) absorb carbon dioxide      d) take in carbon dioxide and emit oxygen

**9. Read the passage then answer the following questions:-**

You have got some things that are complicated and you don't know much about them. Your tongue is about 10 centimeters long. It is covered with taste buds. These are tiny nerve endings, which enable you to taste your food. Babies are born with taste buds all over their mouths. These gradually disappear as they grow older leaving only those on the tongue. An adult has about 1.000 taste buds.

We can taste our food when saliva, a liquid produced by the mouth, dissolves chemicals in the food and washes them over taste buds. There are four basic tastes: Sweet, sour, salt and bitter. All the taste buds can detect all these tastes to some extent, but different areas of the tongue detect different tastes best.

Sweet tastes such as sugar, are best detected by the taste buds at the tip of the tongue. Salt is detected by those at the front sides of the tongue. The taste buds along the edges at back of the tongue are good at detecting sour tastes, such as lemon, and those on the back of the tongue detect bitter tastes such as coffee. There are no taste buds in the center of the tongue.

The tongue is also used in speaking. The combined action of the tongue, throat, mouth and lips changes the sounds into words.

**a) Answer the following questions:**

- 1- Name the four taste types mentioned in the passage and give an example of each.
- 2- How does saliva help us to taste food?
- 3- What does the underlined word (those) refer to?
- 4- What is different about the way a baby tastes from the way an adult tastes?

**b) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

5- Which one of these is not a liquid? -----

- a) saliva      b) water      c) salt      d) lemon juice

6- The center of the tongue -----

- a) tastes food      b) doesn't taste food      c) is found in adult's mouth      d) tastes sour food

7- The function of the tongue is to -----

- a) taste food only      b) taste food and change the sounds into      c) words make words only      d) make sounds only

**10. Read the passage then answer the following questions:-**

El-Arish is one of the most important cities in Sinai . It has always been the gateway to Egypt and so it has been used by invading armies as far back as the Turks and Romans. These armies have destroyed a great deal of Arishi traditional culture . For example, there are hardly any original Arishi houses left. They used to be built around an open courtyard, but nearly all of them have, by now, been destroyed.

Nowadays, there are plans to develop the region. There will be no industrial complexes and huge cities. The developments will follow a “green “approach, and agriculture, fishing and tourism will be the key to the region’s development.

North Sinai Bedouins have not been nomads for some time as they could not travel because of restrictions at borders. Nowadays, many Bedouins own farms on land which has been reclaimed from the desert. Other settled Bedouins became fishermen in Lake Baradawil. There has been a change in the lives of many Bedouin Women. In the old days, they were only allowed to look after the family and some of its animals. Now, many are managing their own businesses producing traditional handcrafts, such as carpets and cloth.

Because of the absence of historic sites in the area, the planners are going to use its unpolluted environment to attract tourists. Tourists like unpolluted areas, therefore all new projects will protect the environment. This approach is called Ecotourism . Ecotourism will not only be good for the economy, it will help to protect our national heritage.

**a) Answer the following questions:**

- 1- How will North Sinai be developed in the future?
- 2- Why have most North Sinai Bedouins become settled?
- 3- What changes have come to the lives of many Bedouin women?
- 4- What is the meaning of Ecotourism? Why is it important?

**b) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

5- ----- destroyed most Arishi culture.

- a) Turks    b) Invading armies    c) Romans    d) The courtyard

6- Traditional houses were built around and open -----

- a) courtyard    b) culture    c) green approach    d) environment

7- The planners are going to use unpolluted environments to attract tourists owing to -----

- a) the absence of historic sites    b) protecting the environment  
c) approach the tourists    d) producing traditional handcrafts

**11. Read the passage then answer the following questions:-**

In many countries today, a difficult question is being asked: Do we the right to use animals in laboratory experiments? Using animals in medical research has many benefits. Animal research has enabled researchers to develop treatments for diseases like smallpox without animal research. Every drug anyone takes today was tried first on animals. Which is more important, the life of a rat that of a three year old child? Medical research is also an excellent way of using animals in research, any more than it can be used as a reason for experimenting on other humans. Animals suffer a lot during these experiments. They are forced to live in small cages and they may be unable to move. Animals have the same rights as humans do, to be able to move freely and not to have pain or fear forced on them . We can use computer modeling instead of animals in research laboratories to save animals’ life.

**a) Answer the following questions:**

- 1- Why is animal research useful?
- 2- How do animals suffer during experiments?
- 3- What is the other way that can be used instead of experimenting on animals?
- 4- Are you with or against using animals

**b) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

5- According to the passage, some people support using animals in research because they think that -----

- a) the life of people is more important than the life of animals .    b) animals are harmful creatures .  
c) many people do not like animals .    d) animals do not suffer during experiments .

6- The idea against using animals in research is that -----

- a) the life of animals is more important than the life of humans .  
b) people should help to increase the number of animals .  
c) researcher have to use animals in their medical research .    d) animals have the same rights as humans do .

7- An appropriate title for this passage would be -----

- a) Scientific Research    b) Research Laboratories    c) Animal Rights    d) Human Rights

**12. Read the passage then answer the following questions:-**

On leaving, Mrs. Madga gave last minute instructions to the new baby-sitter, a young girl of seventeen whose main work was to look after the baby. The girl had never done this work before and Mrs. Magda was a little bit anxious. "Make yourself comfortable, Soha." Mrs. Magda said "I've prepared a tray of food and fruit for you. It's on the table. You can, of course, listen to the radio or watch the television, but don't have it on too loud because it might wake our little baby. Sound moves terribly in this house. If the boy wakes up, go to his room and stay with there until he goes back to sleep. Anyway, he's two years old so you shouldn't have any trouble. My husband and I will than they had expected. They heard the sound of TV. A light was still on in the living room. The little baby was crying loudly. His face was living room immediately and came out, holding the baby who very hungry.

"What is she doing there? Where is Soha? She is fast asleep! She has eaten all the food here!"

**a) Answer the following questions:**

- 1- Why was Mrs. Magda worried about the baby-sitter?
- 2- What did Mr. & Mrs. Kamal find when they returned home?
- 3- What instructions did Mrs. Magda give the baby-sitter?
- 4- Was Soha a good baby-sitter or a bad one? Why?

**b) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

5- Although Mrs. Magda gave strict instructions to the baby-sister, she -----

- a) forgot them                      b) carried them out      c) neglected them                      d) followed them

6- When Mrs. Magda returned home, she was surprised because -----

- a) the baby-sitter was awake .                      b) the television was on .  
c) there was a light in the living – room .                      d) the baby was crying and Soha was fast asleep

7- Mrs. Magda came home -----

- a) before five                      b) after five                      c) at give                      d) at half past four

**13. Read the passage then answer the following questions:-**

It was believed that being overweight was healthy but nowadays few people agree to this viewpoint. While many people are fighting the battle to reduce weight, studies are being performed concerning appetite and how it is controlled by both emotional and biochemical factors. Some of the conclusions of these studies may give us the ability to understand how deal with weight problems. For example, when several people were asked about their eating habits in times of stress, 44% said they reacted to stressful situations by eating

Further investigations of both humans and animals indicated that it is not food which relieves tension, but rather the act of chewing. A test showed that extremely fat people have a high sense of taste, and love more flavored food than thin people. When deprived of the variety of tastes, extremely fat people are not satisfied and consequently eat more to fulfil this need. Exercise has been recommended as an important part of weight-loss programmes. However, it has been found out that mild exercise is a way of losing weight because using the stairs instead of the lift is better in the long run than taking on a severe programme such as running slowly ( jogging ). Many people find jogging difficult to continue over long periods of time, it also increases appetite.

**a) Answer the following questions:**

- 1-What is the main idea of the passage?
- 2-What is the best treatment for overweight, according to writer's point of view?
- 3-What are the two kinds of exercises that help lose weight?
- 4-How does eating relieve tension?

**b) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

5- One of the emotional factors which control appetite is -----

- a) jogging      b) chewing      c) eating      d) stress

6- When fat people are deprived of the variety of taste they -----

- a) lose weight      b) practice exercises      c) eat more      d) use flavours

7- The word "further" in the passage means -----

- a) more      b) super      c) greater      d) extreme

**14. Read the passage then answer the following questions:-**

Samer lived with his parents until he was twenty-four years old, and then he got a job in an office of a big factory in another town, so he left home. He found a little flat and lived there on his own. At first he cleaned it himself, but after a few weeks he asked Mrs. Leila to help him. She promised to come to clean his flat for an hour every morning. After she had been working for Samer for two weeks, one evening, he looked at the mirror in his bedroom and thought, "That mirror looks very dusty. Mrs. Leila's forgotten to clean it, I can write on the dust with my finger!"

Before he left for work in the morning he wrote this message on the dust "I cough whenever I breathe because everything in this room is very dusty! " When he got home that evening, he looked at the mirror and wondered why she hadn't cleaned it. Then he bent down and saw a bottle in front of the mirror. He picked the bottle up and looked at it carefully. Mrs. Leila had written some words on it. He read the words "Cough Medicine "and he couldn't make head nor tail.

a) Answer the following questions:

- 1- Why did Samer leave his parents' home?
- 2- What caused Samer to cough?
- 3- How did Samer know that Mrs. Leila had read his message?
- 4- What do you think Mrs. Leila? Why?

b) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

5- Samer found the mirror dirty, after Leila had been working for -----

- a) a fortnight      b) a year      c) a month      d) fifteen days

6- To ask Mrs. Leila to clean the mirror, Samer -----

- a) wrote a letter      b) telephoned her      c) wrote a letter      d) spoke to her

7- When Samer read the words on the bottle he -----

- a) took the medicine      b) was happy      c) was interested      d) was confused

**15. Read the passage then answer the following questions:-**

During a recent car trip, I pulled into a rest area and was approached by a dirty man who asked for money to get petrol for his car. I rejected his appeal rationalizing that to give money to beggars would be to encourage a practice already on a disturbing rise in our country.

Later, I had a change of heart. I handed the man ten pounds and wished him well, but I couldn't bring myself to grasp the outstretched hand he offered in appreciation. People begin and end almost every interaction with handshakes. Handshaking has become a thing of the past and increasingly dangerous, too. Risks associated with handshaking have become more threatening than the mere passing of germs from one person to another. It is true that diseases such as hepatitis can not be passed from one person to another through a simple handshake. But what about cold viruses? Rather than risk our health unnecessarily, we might adopt an alternative to handshaking, The " namaste " – placing your two palms together with fingers pointed upward – is used throughout much of the world as a display of respect when greeting someone. Similarly, the military salute would permit us to greet each other without touching. As a possible compromise between the " namaste " and the salute, we might consider the familiar Japanese bow .

a) Answer the following questions:

- 1- Why does the writer think handshaking is a bad habit?
- 2- Why did the writer hesitate to give money to the man?
- 3- What is the advantage of a military salute?
- 4- Are you with or against handshaking? Why?

b) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

5- According to the writer, we ----- get cold viruses by handshaking.

- a) can      b) can never      c) couldn't      d) never

6- " I couldn't bring myself to grasp the outstretched hand " means that writer ----- hands .

- a) stretched his      b) shook      c) didn't shake      d) was able to shake

7- There are ----- alternatives to handshaking.

- a) no      b) two      c) three      d) four

**16. Read the passage then answer the following questions:-**

Video and television are responsible for the declining interest in reading among the young. While they may be harmless in themselves, they do nothing to build up reading skills. If some of the hours children spend watching television were devoted to reading, the population would be better educated.

Watching a story is a totally passive pastime. Someone else has made the decisions about everything in the story. Reading a story is an active partnership between writer and reader. Ideas are sketched and the mind of the reader creates the rest. Watching something is easier.

The problem is that many children read very slowly. *They* decode a page or two in a class and about the same again for homework. It is hardly surprising that such children then declare that they find reading boring and prefer to watch television. Their difficulty is not reading the words-it is interpreting them. They need to be able to read fast enough to feed the mind's hunger for a story. That means practice. Only by reading daily will a child become a strong and independent reader.

Parents need to be convinced of the importance of preventing their children from wasting their hours on inert viewing. Without the television the child is likely to turn to books for entertainment.

a) Answer the following questions:

- 1- What is the writer's main objection to video and TV?
- 2- Why is watching a story easier than reading it?
- 3- How can children be good readers?
- 4- The writer believes that visual images, such as watching television, spoil the imagination. Do you agree? Why?

**b) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- 5- The underlined pronoun "they" refers to -----  
 a) *the young*                      b) *video & television*                      c) *children*                      d) *reading skills*
- 6- The writer says that population would be better educated if children -----  
 a) *do their homework*                      b) *watch TV*                      c) *read much*                      b) *read slowly*
- 7- According to the writer's view, TV is ----- means of entertainment  
 a) *not an effective*                      b) *an encouraging*                      c) *an effective*                      d) *not a cheap*

**17. Read the passage then answer the following questions:-**

The ancient Greeks always asserted that a healthy mind in a healthy body is the key to a well-balanced life. Nowadays many schools are decreasing the amount of time given to sports, and some schools are removing it altogether. Although academic subjects are certainly a very important part of the school curriculum, I am strongly opposed to the complete removal of sports.

Firstly, schools have a responsibility to educate children in all areas. For that reason, it is just as important to provide sports practice for the professional sportsmen and women of the future, as it is to provide academic training to those who will go on to university.

In addition, students these days spend long hours studying or working at their computers. Therefore, they need the opportunity to do some physical activity during the school day. This will not help to increase their level of fitness and make them healthier, it will also mean that they develop better social skills and are able to concentrate on their studies for longer, and thus achieve better result.

In conclusion, I strongly believe that sports should remain a key part of the school curriculum. All children have the right to get a balanced education, and they should not be deprived of the opportunity to learn how to play sports.

**a) Answer the following questions:**

- 1- Does the write support or oppose the issue of increasing sport time at schools?
- 2- In your opinion, how could practising sports at schools help students later in University and at work?
- 3- Why is it important to practise sports during the school day?
- 4- What should not children be deprived of?

**b) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- 5- Which statement is not true?  
 a) *Sports encourage team spirit*                      b) *Sports give the chance to be physically fit.*  
 c) *Sports help students become more successful*                      d) *Sports lead to overweight*
- 6- The ancient Greeks believe that:  
 a) *There is a connection between intelligence and a strong boy*                      b) *Well-balanced food is important*  
 c) *There is a negative effect of sports on the body*                      d) *Studying is more important than sports .*
- 7- The word "key" means -----  
 a) *lock*                      b) *necessary*                      c) *clue*                      d) *guide*

**18. Read the passage then answer the following questions:-**

Over the past twenty years, computers and the internet have become more and more important to us. In fact, depending on computer technology continues to grow everyday. We seem to use computers for almost everything these days, in shopping, driving our car or, communicating with relatives and colleagues.

This explosion in computer technology has resulted in a rush to install computers in every classroom and to "wire" every school to the Internet. In the USA, between 1984, and 1997 alone, the number of computers in secondary schools increased to more than 8 million nits, Both educators and students alike have been forced to keep up with this new wave of technology. Teachers have found that even though they themselves are still trying to learn the most basic of computer skills, they are expected to teach students about computer know-how.

Few people would question the role that computers could play in education. Some educators claim that students given the opportunity to use them in a classroom setting will get better grades than those who learn without having had any computer experience. These people say that just as computer technology has improved the way cars work, computers will make the classroom a better place to teach concepts and ideas that students need to become brighter, more successful adults.

**a) Answer the following questions:**





large amount of money. Now everything is changed in Mrs. Fox's life. She bought two flats; one for herself and one for her son. She put the rest of the money in the bank.

Mrs. Fox rang Hill after supper. After Hill had said hello to his mother, she heard him put the telephone down on the table. Then she heard angry voices. The noise increased and she heard the sound of breaking furniture, low cries and finally she heard a shot. She shouted into the telephone again, but there was a terrible silence. Mrs. Fox, at once, rang up the police.

Five minutes later, two policemen were running up the flat. When Hill opened the door the policeman pushed him away looking for signs of blood. Suddenly, the officer laughed when he looked at the radio. In fact, the sound of the shot was coming from a play on the radio. Hill could not answer his mother because he was busy paying the milkman at the door.

a) Answer the following questions:

- 1- What was the good news Mrs. Fox received from her lawyer?
- 2- How was everything changed in Mrs. Fox's life?
- 3- Why did Mrs. Fox ring up the police?

b) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 4- The policeman reached Hill's flat.....  
a) after a long time                      b) immediately after Mrs. fox's call  
c) before Mrs. Fox's call                d) before the milkman came.
- 5- The noise increased in paragraph 2 means:  
a) It did not last for long.    b) It became lower.    c) It became higher.    d) It stopped suddenly

**24. Read the passage then answer the following questions:-**

When she was two years old Helen Keller suffered a severe illness which left her without sight and hearing. She lived in darkness and stillness and her life was without past or future. The most important step in her education was learning how to read. By raised letters on cards, she learned to recognize words. Despite blindness and deafness she had the will to learn how to communicate with others. Helen used to study out of doors. She felt roses in gardens. She pressed them softly in her hands. She enjoyed nature by feeling and touching the dew on the grass.

In spite of her great pains, she was able to join the university. She received her BA degree with honors in 1904. She devoted her life to help the blind and the deaf. She worked and wrote for them. Helen never gave up and always thanked God who gave her the blessing of being alive.

a) Answer the following questions:

- 1- When did Helen lose her sight and hearing?
- 2- How did Helen learn how to read?
- 3- them line 5 refers to .....

b) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 4- Helen used to go outside her house to .....
  - 5- Helen Keller could enjoy nature by .....
- a) hear the singing of birds .    b) study new things.    c) see roses.    d) meet her friends.  
a) running in the open.    b) reading books.    c) playing in the rain.    d) feeling the dew on grass.

**25. Read the passage then answer the following questions:-**

When you drive your car, there are many rules to follow. Your car should be in a good condition. You should check the amount of petrol in your car; otherwise it may stop suddenly in the middle of a crowded street causing you a lot of trouble. Adjust the mirror to be sure that no one is parking behind you. Don't forget to measure the level of oil in your engine and be sure the battery is working properly. The tyres should be checked before moving. If you neglect that, you will have to face the trouble of changing the flat tyre by yourself.

If you don't check your wipers you will be sorry. It might rain suddenly and spoil your trip. You have to check the brakes also or you will bang against the first tree in front of you. Don't forget to fasten your seat belts or you'll pay a fine. After all these precautions, do you still want to drive a car?

a) Answer the following questions:

- 1- What will happen if you don't check the petrol in your tank?
- 2- Why should you check the tyres before driving?
- 3- You should examine the brakes of the car. Why?

b) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 4- What will happen if-you don't fasten your seat belt?  
a) You will make an accident.    b) You will face troubles in crowded streets  
c) Your car will break down.    d) You may pay a fine.
- 5- Find a word in the passage which means:  
"give no or too little attention"



**26. Read the passage then answer the following questions:-**

Most of the passengers were asleep in the eight o'clock train. It was already half past nine. I was smoking while my wife was reading a letter. My little daughter was eating an ice cream. Suddenly we were all shocked to hear a loud cry from a young lady. She screamed "Help! Help! He's going to kill me. He has a gun." Many people ran towards her. We asked her where the murderer was. She looked around for a few moments, then at us and finally said "What a terrible dream!" We comforted her saying that she was safe. One of us got her a cold drink. When she felt better we returned to our seats.

An old man was sitting beside her. He kept talking to her all through the last hour of the journey. When we got off at the station. I said to the man "It was kind of you to keep talking with her to help her to be quiet." He said with a smile, "Oh! No, I only wanted to prevent her from sleeping and having another dream."

**a) Answer the following questions:**

- 1- What was the writer's wife doing in the train?
- 2- Why did the old man keep talking with the young lady?
- 3- 'we' line 5 refers to .....

**b) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- 4- The train had been running for ..... when the young lady cried.  
a) two hours    b) one hour and a half.    c) an hour.    d) eight hours
- 5- The young lady awoke when .....  
a) the passengers ran towards her    b) the thief attacked her.  
c) the old man spoke to her    d) she took the cold drink.

**27. Read the passage then answer the following questions:-**

I have a friend called Gogo who always pretends to know everything. Whenever a name is mentioned, he says he knows the person who owns that name. I believed Gogo until one day I found out he was a big liar. Once he visited me when I was sitting with my cousin Mr. Sami Salim, who happened to be a well famous writer. Before I introduced my friend to Mr. Sami his eyes fell on one of the books, which was lying on the table. Gogo at once said that the author of the book was one of his relatives, and started telling stories about the adventures they had together. He also said that Sami Salim never wrote a book before discussing its ideas with him. Sami kept on listening with interest. He asked my friend Gogo if he could recognize Mr. Sami Salim if he saw him. My friend assured him that he would. With a loud laugh, Mr. Sami introduced himself to my friend who was so ashamed that he immediately left the house. Since that day my friend Gogo does his best to avoid me, and when he does meet me he never says that he knows anything or anybody.

**a) Answer the following questions:**

- 1- What was Gogo's bad habit?
- 2- When did the writer discover that Gogo was a big liar?
- 3- The word they in line 6 refers to.....

**b) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- 4- Gogo.....  
a) knew every body in the city    b) never told lies    c) did not know everybody    d) knew Mr. Sami
- 5- The writer's cousin asked Gogo if he knew Sami Salim to.....  
a) prove that Gogo was not telling the truth    b) know where he lived  
c) discuss the ideas with him    d) tell him about his new story

**28. Read the passage then answer the following questions:-**

The sinking of the great passenger ship 'Titanic' seventy years ago is nearly forgotten. A small number of passengers were actually saved; those who are still alive today can be counted on the fingers of one hand.

Then you will easily understand why I have been asked to write about that sad story. The Titanic, the largest ship in the world, was thought by many people at that time to be unsinkable. Yet when it hit an iceberg in thick fog in the North Atlantic Ocean, it actually disappeared in less than twenty minutes, taking nearly fifteen hundred people to the bottom.

My own life was saved by my youth. Being only a boy of fourteen, I was one of those lucky women and children who were allowed to get away first from the sinking ship. The other passengers threw themselves into deep water and tried to mount our boat with the result that it turned over. Many people drowned, but I was strong enough to swim for three hours in the icy water before a passing ship picked me up.

**a) Answer the following questions:**

- 1- What was the cause of the sinking of the 'Titanic'?
- 2- How was the writer of this passage saved?

3- What did the people think about the ship before the tragedy?

b) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4- "can be counted on the fingers of one hand " line 2 /3 means.....

a- ten persons      b- many people      c- very few people      d- five hundred men

5- The sinking of the ship happened nearly in.....

a- 1990      b- 1930      c- 1800      d- 2000

**29. Read the passage then answer the following questions:-**

Hand-signs and gestures were used long before men learned to speak in words. In fact, words are not man's only means of communicating with each other. Red Indians, for example, once spoke different languages but has a common sign language. The sight of smoke and the sound of drums are means of sending different messages. These are common sign languages without words.

Today, people who are deaf or mute make even greater use of sign language. Though they may never be able to speak or hear they can understand each other by gestures or hand signals. Signs are as good as words. In African jungles, drum messages warn people against dangers. In Canary Islands a whistling language passes messages among sailing boats. In cities, of course, traffic lights; red, yellow and green control vehicles and people. They give to them different instructions without words.

Shaking hands and bowing show that we are friendly to each other. Gestures which mean Yes or No are most interesting. In some countries people show no by shaking their heads from side to side. This happens in Egypt, but in Lebanon people lift their heads up and back, so that their chins move forward.

a) Answer the following questions:

1- What did people use in order to communicate before learning to speak?

2- Why do Africans use drums in jungles?

3- How do traffic lights give instructions without words?

b) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4- People in Canary Islands communicate by.....

a- shouting      b- whistling      c- smoke      d- drums

5 According to the passage the oldest method of communication is.....

a- words      b- pictures      c- traffic lights      d- hand signs

**30. Read the passage then answer the following questions:-**

Pluto is a nice little dog, which we have had for almost five years. He has soft and white hair, which is so smooth that everyone of the family enjoys moving his hand on him. Pluto is now convinced that he is actually a member of the family, and so has equal rights. It is his rights that Pluto insists on but duties he has none.

One day we were expecting some guests for dinner. Mother woke up early to prepare food before the guests arrived. Pluto followed her and started barking asking for some food. Mother dismissed him from the kitchen, closed the door and carried on her cooking in peace.

The guests arrived; took their seats around the table and started eating. All of a sudden Pluto jumped in front of one of the lady guests. She was so frightened that she screamed loudly. In spite of Pluto's strong resistance, my sister took him away. He kept shouting when he was locked up in a room. Finally, my mother gave him something to eat. One of the good things about Pluto is that he forgets our little cruelties to him. Anyhow, he looked up at my mother gratefully, and ate with great appetite.

a) Answer the following questions:

1- Why does every one like to move his hands on Pluto?

2- Why did mother wake up early one day?

3- The pronoun her line 6 refers to .....

b) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4- Pluto jumped in front of the lady to.....

a- make her scream      b- take food from her plate      c- show her that he had equal rights      d- welcome her

5- The lady screamed because.....

a- she did not expect to see Pluto.      b- Pluto shared the food with her.

c- Pluto was an ugly dog.      d- the food was hot.

**31. Read the passage then answer the following questions:-**

It was 40 degrees below zero. The wind was blowing hard. A group of five men pushed their way through the high snow. They were disappointed, when they reached the top of the Alps. They found that others had reached it before them. After fixing the British flag, they started their long journey back.

The journey was slow, and the joy had gone out of them. The sun hardly appeared. The snow was soft and snowstorms often made it impossible to see the stones they had put to guide their way back. Captain Scott, the head of the group, showed signs of weakness and fell into a deep hole in the ice. The four men who were left continued their journey. Day by day the men became more tired. The following days were terrible. There was very little food left and even body was desperate. Captain Hil suffered from frozen feet that made him walk slowly in great pain. One day he walked out in the snow and never came back. He hoped that his death would help his friends to continue the journey.

Now only three men were left. They were brave and patient. They knew that they could make it. Two days later a helicopter spotted their place and saved them.

a) Answer the following questions:

- 1- Why were the men disappointed?
- 2- How did Captain Scott lose his life?
- 3- What did the men do to guide their way back?

b) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4- Captain Hil walked slowly because.....

- a- he had pain in his feet    b- he was hungry and tired    c- it was very cold    d- the sun was very hot

5- We know all about the trip from.....

- a- one of the men who survived.    b- Mr. Scott    c- Mr. Hil    d- the pilot of the helicopter

### **32. Read the passage then answer the following questions:-**

A retired English businessman, John Courtney, was visiting his daughter, Mrs. Bert and his two grand daughters Julia and Anne. Enjoying one of his pleasures of being a grandfather, John, took the two little girls off for an afternoon outing at the famous London zoo.

From then on, the story was one of sheer horror. Carrying a bag of sweets, Julia slipped from her grandfather's hand, skipped along in front of the cages until she stopped at one occupied by two African lions. She offered them sweets. Suddenly one of the lions shot a paw through the bars and pinned the little girl by the hand. The lion pulled her little by little to his cage. A loud scream was heard and a crowd of people gathered rounds the place.

A man with a cane tried to hit the lion on the head. He grabbed the child's legs and tried to pull her away but the lion was stronger. The man was Julia's grandfather. The guard came quickly. With a rifle in his hand, he began shooting at the lion. But it was too late. The poor child was torn into pieces inside the cage and the grand father collapsed.

a) Answer the following questions:

- 1- Why did John Courtney go to the zoo?
- 2- Why did Julia approach the lion's cage?
- 3- The pronoun them line 6 refers to.....

b) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4- The guard was holding ..... in his hand.

- a- a cane    b- a rifle    c- a whip    d- a packet of sweets

5- A suitable title for the passage is.....

- a- Two African lions    b- A tragic end    c- Mrs. Bert and her two daughters    d- The kind grandfather

### **33. Read the passage then answer the following questions:-**

Joan of Arc was a young brave girl born in a small village in France. Her only ambition was to help her country, which was at war with England. She dreamt of setting her country free from the hands of the English. She went to Charles, the king of France and told him that she had been sent by God to save France. The king believed her story and permitted her to lead the French army against the enemy. She went from town to town and from village to village asking people to join the army against the British enemy.

Joan of Arc led the attack. Fort after fort fell to the French. The English army retreated and was about to lose the battle. Suddenly, Joan fell down to the ground wounded. The fight went on but the wounded brave girl did not give up.

Unfortunately, she fell into the hands of the English. The English believed that she worked for the devil and she should be burnt to death. After five hundreds years, the world was told that Joan was a saint who took her orders from God. Every year the French people celebrate her birth and her death and remember her as a great national heroine who sacrificed herself for the sake of her country. Tourists never forget to visit her village and her grave whenever they go to France.

a) Answer the following questions:

- 1- What was Joan's real ambition in life?
- 2- Why did Joan go to the king of France?

3- How did Joan lose her life?

b) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4- Charles made Joan the leader of the army because .....

a- he lost his mind

b- Joan was a good fighter

c- she was an ambitious girl

d- he believed that God had sent her to save France

5- The English burned Joan alive because .....

a- she was fighting them

b- they believed that the devil helped her

c- she won the battle

d- she was a brave woman

**34. Read the passage then answer the following questions:-**

This is an old folklore tale from Holland. The people in the village were watching a little boy who was putting an apple on top of his head. Not far away stood a man holding a crossbow. This man who was going to shoot at the apple was the boy's father. Every one was quiet waiting to see what would happen. The story said that many years ago the people of Holland had a very cruel ruler. He used to have his hat on the top of tall post. Every villager who passed by had to bow to it as sign of respect. But Wilson Mill refused to do so.

When the ruler heard that Wilson disobeyed his orders, he became angry. The ruler knew that Wilson was the best to shoot with the crossbow. So he ordered Wilson to shoot an apple off his son's head or he would kill both of them.

The boy stood still. He was not afraid. His father shot the arrow with no hesitation and the apple was cut in two. It was said that later Wilson killed the ruler and the villagers got rid of his tyranny.

a) Answer the following questions:

1- Why did the ruler put his hat on the post?

2- Why was an apple put on the boy's head?

3- Give an example to show that William's son was brave.

b) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4- Wilson helped the villagers because .....

a) he did not bow to the ruler's hat

b) he put the apple on his son's head

c) he shot the arrow without hesitation

d) he killed the ruler

5- The word cruel in line 4 is closest in meaning to.....

a) brave

b) generous

c) unkind

d) quiet

**35. Read the passage then answer the following questions:-**

Four hundred years ago, six ships, carrying 300 men started out to sail round the world. No one believed it could be done. They started from Spain. The captain who led the sailors was called Sindbad.

The ships were old and in a bad state. The six ships began the journey in clear weather. Many heavy storms came and the cold winter set in. Now many sailors turned against Sindbad. They wanted to go home. But Sindbad knew how to deal with them. Some were put in locked rooms; others were taken to shore; one was killed. When it turned warm, the ships started to sail again. One of the ships was lost in a great storm. Now Sindbad was sailing where no ships have ever been there. For months and months they sailed. It seemed that the sea had no end. Food and water ran out. The men became so weak that they could hardly stand. Many were sick; some died.

Later, they sighted islands. There they found food and water. On one of the islands they had war with the natives. Sindbad was killed, but some of his men got back to the ships. Now the trip was coming to an end. One ship and only five sailors returned. Sindbad's ambition came true. For the first time, men had sailed round the world.

a) Answer the following questions:

1- What did the people think about the journey?

2- Why did many sailors turn against Sindbad?

3- Where was Sindbad killed?

b) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4- How many ships were destroyed during the journey?

a) six ships

b) one ship

c) five ships

d) no ships

5- Sindbad's ambition turned true because.....

a) he was killed.

b) many sailors lost their lives.

c) they could sail round the world.

d) it took them little time to sail round the world.

**36. Read the passage then answer the following questions:-**

Mrs. Hill reached the Central Railway Station in Cairo. Her leg was troubling her badly. So she sat down there with satisfaction. By her side she placed the stick which she had to use when walking. She never believed that sitting there would improve her health; but Dr. Magdi had said that

she must be out of her flat in the open air every day. However, sitting in the railway station cost her nothing. She looked down at her old shoes and thought of herself as an old, poor and useless woman.

Suddenly, two policemen sat down in front of her. One of them took a photograph from his pocket. Mrs. Hill could see that it was the photograph of a young man. A train moved slowly into the station and stopped. Mrs. Hill could recognize the young man whom she saw in the picture coming down the train. When he saw the policemen, the young man jumped backward and started to run away. As the thief passed by Mrs. Hill's seat, she threw her stick towards him. By chance, it went directly between his legs and he fell down. The police officer thanked the old woman and offered her a reward of one thousand pounds.

a) Answer the following questions:

- 1- Why did Mrs. Hill use a stick while walking?
- 2- What did Dr. Magdi advise the old woman to do?
- 3- How was Mrs. Hill a great help to the police?

b) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 4- When the thief saw the police,.....  
a) *he stopped at once.*    b) *he went to Mrs Hill.*    c) *he went to the police officer.*    d) *he ran away*
- 5- When the thief passed Mrs. Hill,.....  
a) *she shouted loudly.*    b) *she called the police at once*  
c) *she ran away*    d) *she threw her stick at the young thief.*

**37. Read the passage then answer the following questions:-**

The sun was high in the sky and the rays shone directly on a bare piece of ground in the forest. In the centre of this bare spot there was something that looked like a large stone; it was a tiger.

The tiger lay quite still. It was no longer able to attack the deer that were so easy to kill when he was young. They moved too quickly for him now. In order that he might live, it found himself forced to hunt the weakest animal of all, namely man. In other words, the tiger became a man-eater. It would wait impatiently near the stream until some unfortunate woman came near enough for it. When the men of the village arrived at the scene of the killing, the tiger was far away.

People began to talk about it. Some of them made efforts to find it, but in vain. The tiger's habit of never going to the same place where it had once killed made it very difficult to know where it was. Tricks of all kinds were tried. Traps were cleverly laid but the tiger escaped them all.

One morning the people of the village were surprised. They found the tiger lying dead near the lake. The villagers discovered that the old tiger had a fight at night with a big buffalo.

a) Answer the following questions:

- 1- What did the old tiger hunt?
- 2- Why was it difficult for the villagers to kill the tiger?
- 3- How was the old tiger killed at last?

b) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 4- 'They moved too quickly for him' in paragraph 2 means.....  
a) *the tiger moved very quickly*    b) *the tiger was strong*  
c) *the tiger was a fast runner*    d) *the tiger could not hunt the deer.*
- 5- The villagers were ..... When they found the tiger dead.  
a) *patient*    b) *clever*    c) *afraid*    d) *amazed*

**38. Read the passage then answer the following questions:-**

With the development of modern civilization, life has become more and more complicated. As a result, the car, which was considered a luxury, is now looked upon as a necessity. Doctors, engineers and businessmen can not work without private cars. Moreover, the rapid growth of population in capitals and main cities has actually made the joy of possessing a car much less. Besides the problems of keeping a car in good condition and the lack of garages, there is the big problem of crowded streets.

Most people insist on having a private car to avoid the long wait at a bus stop. To get on or off the bus is a hard struggle. Going to places by taxi does not solve the problem as taxi drivers take passengers according to rules they themselves set. They sometimes ask for more money than they deserve.

Cars could be a source of trouble. Many people had to leave their cars in the streets because garages are expensive and crowded. This exposes them to decay or robbery. In rush hours streets are so blocked that it takes a driver a long time to get to his destination.

a) Answer the following questions:

- 1- Why has modern life become more complicated?

2- When are cars, according to the writer, exposed to robbery?

3- Give a suitable title for the passage

b ) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4- Taking a public bus is a problem because .....

- a) *it is expensive*    b) *getting on and off the bus is difficult*    c) *it is very slow*    d) *bus drivers drive carelessly*

5- "they" line 9 refers to .....

- a) *taxi drivers*    b) *taxies*    c) *buses*    d) *passengers*

**39. Read the passage then answer the following questions:-**

Professor Ameen was an Egyptian scientist who lived a quiet life with his wife. People called him absent-minded because he always forgets things. One day he told his wife that he was going to fly next week to France. His wife Maha asked him where he was going to stay. "I don't know yet," he said. Then his wife asked him to send her the hotel's address in a telegram. Professor Ameen flew to Paris. He was lucky to find a good hotel in the centre of the city. He unpacked his things in his room and then he sent his wife a telegram to know where he was staying. He did not forget to put his hotel's address in it.

In the evening he finished his work early, so he went to the Metro cinema to watch a film. He came out at ten o'clock and dreamed of a nice dinner and a good sleep in his room. The driver of the taxi asked the professor where he wanted to go. Unfortunately, Mr. Ameen could not remember the name and address of the hotel.

Professor Ameen got off the taxi and went to a telegraph office. There, he sent his wife another telegram. In it he wrote, "Please send my hotel address at this telegraph office." What made things worse was that professor Ameen had to look for another hotel to spend the night as his wife did not receive the first telegram.

a) Answer the following questions:

1- What was strange about the professor?

2- Why did Ameen's wife ask him to send her the hotel's address?

3- Find words in the passage which mean the opposite of:    better -    luckily

b ) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4- The professor's wife did not answer the telegram as.....

- a) *she was careless*    b) *she was asleep*    c) *she did not receive the first one.*    d) *she was absent minded*

5- How many telegrams did the professor send to his wife?

- a) *one telegram*    b) *two telegrams*    c) *three telegrams*    d) *no telegrams*

**40. Read the passage then answer the following questions:-**

When I got to Port Said harbor, I knew that the ship from Liverpool, and on which my wife was travelling, had been delayed in Tunisia with engine trouble. It was expected to be two hours late. I decided, therefore, to wander around to make the time pass quickly.

The walk in the fresh air made me good. I went to the cafeteria where I ordered a cup of tea. I sat down at the comer drinking my tea and studying the faces around me. Some looked anxious and some were nervous. One could easily know who was going to leave and who was expecting somebody.

When I had finished my tea, I made my way to a bookshop where I bought some magazines to kill time. Then I went to one of the waiting rooms and sat comfortably in an armchair. As soon as I began opening my magazines, someone touched my shoulder. He was an old friend who was about to leave Port Said to Athens. My friend Hosam and I found things to talk about until the arrival of my wife's ship.

When the ship arrived, I was disappointed not to find my wife. When I asked the captain of the ship, he was sorry to tell me that the name of my wife was not among the list of passengers.

a) Answer the following questions:

1- Why did the writer go to Port Said harbor?

2- What was the writer doing while having his tea?

3- Where was the writer when his friend saw him?

b ) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4- The ship was delayed in Tunisia because of.....

- a) *a violent storm*    b) *high waves*    c) *troubles in the engine*    d) *heavy rain*

5- The writer was disappointed because .....

- a) *he saw the captain*    b) *the ship was late*    c) *he met his friend*    d) *he did not find his wife*

**41. Read the passage then answer the following questions:-**

The main reason why so many young people start smoking is that they see adults smoking. They think that it is a "grown up" thing to do. They smoke in order to look older and impress others,

and also because they don't really believe that smoking will cause any harm. They don't want to believe others about the dangers of smoking.

Smoking may cause cancer, lungs and heart diseases. Nicotine is addictive It makes the heart beat faster and makes the arteries contract. Tar and carbon monoxide may cause cancer. If you are a regular smoker you will lose ten minutes of your life for every cigarette you smoke.

Anti smoking societies aim at discouraging people from smoking. They try to make people give up this bad and harmful habit. These societies are doing their best to limit cigarette advertising in the newspapers and on television.

**a) Answer the following questions:**

- 1- According to the passage why do young people smoke?
- 2- Mention some diseases caused by smoking.
- 3- What do anti smoking societies aim at?

**b) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- 4- If you are a regular smoker you will.....  
a) live a healthy life    b) live a long life    c) live a short life    d) enjoy your life
- 5- The word 'they' in the last paragraph refers to.....  
a) people    b) advertisements    c) Anti-smoking societies    d) newspapers

**42. Read the passage then answer the following questions:-**

Robinson Crusoe's real desire was to be a sailor. His parents would not let him go because they believed he was still young and there were many dangers at sea. Robinson Crusoe was tired of waiting and decided to run away with his friends on a big ship. One afternoon high waves crashed on the ship. Robinson remembered all the dangers his parents had talked about. Suddenly a big wave came up and pulled Robinson off the ship and into the water. He swam on and on until he came to an island.

When the sun came up next day, Robinson looked on the beach but no one was there. He knew that he had to stay on the island alone. He cut down some trees so as to make a house to protect himself against wild animals.

Years went by. His clothes became more and more ragged. He made some new clothes from goat skins. After that he made an umbrella to keep the rain and the sun off him. Now Robinson had been on the island for many years.

At last Robinson saw a ship coming towards the island. He lit fire to signal the ship. The captain of the ship saw the fire and carried Robinson Crusoe back to England.

**a) Answer the following questions:**

- 1- What was Robinson Crusoe's ambition?
- 2- Why did Robinson want to make a house on the island?
- 3- Find words in the passage that mean the opposite of these words: - pushed - tame

**b) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- 4- They line 1 refers to .....  
a) the dangers at sea    b) wild animals    c) Robinson's parents    d) Robinson's friends
- 5- The word 'ragged' line 10 means .....  
a) light    b) heavy    c) worn out    d) unchanged

**43. Read the passage then answer the following questions:-**

Fire broke out yesterday in a large store. Fortunately, the only casualty was the watchman. There was extensive damage to the third floor.

The fire officer said, "We suspect the fire was started by a device which someone had set to go off at about 2 a.m." Hassari, the night watchman, was there alone. He was overcome by fumes and was taken to hospital unconscious. When he came to himself, he said to reporters: "I had already done my third inspection of the store and was sitting down to write my report when I noticed an odd smell. It wasn't until I'd made absolutely sure there was a fire and I couldn't do anything about it myself that I rang the fire brigade." The store manager reported, "We have had a number of threats lately. There was a minor fire in the store the same time last year and we had received a number of warnings before that one, too." He went on, "Fire prevention people suggested some more fire precautions. Accordingly, we have installed a complete new fire prevention system" "But for Hassan," he added, "it could have been much worse. We shall be showing our appreciation to him with a gift."

**a) Answer the following questions:**

- 1- What did the watchman do when he was sure there was a fire?
- 2- Why did the store manager intend to give the watchman a gift?
- 3- Why was Hassan taken to hospital?

**b) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- 4- If Hassan had not called the fire brigade,.....  
*a- there would be more damage*                      *b- there would have been more damage.*  
*c- The manager would have called the police.*      *d- There will be more damage.*

- 5- When Hassan went to inspect the smell, he .....  
*a- was doing his third round*                      *b- had just sat down to write his report.*  
*c- knew how bad the fire was.*                      *d- had already heard the alarm bell.*

**44. Read the passage then answer the following questions:-**

Superstition is a belief, which is not based on reason or fact, but on associations of ideas, as in magic. Some people believe in one or two superstitions. For instance, many people believe that misfortune will happen if the water in which eggs have been boiled touch your hand. A potato carried in your pocket will ward you off rheumatism. For the prevention of toothache; some people believe that the sufferer should drive a nail into a big tree.

Others believe that putting on the left stocking before the right cause's bad luck. Opening an umbrella inside the house will make you miserable all day. Horror of number 13 is a popular superstition. Some hotels, in fact, knowing the fear of this unlucky number, exclude this number from all rooms. Crossed knives on a table mean a quarrel. Some people believe that a broken mirror foretells a death in the family. In England, throughout the middle Ages, horseshoes were nailed on the doors. This keeps away evil spirits. The Japanese nail a piece of wood from a certain tree on their walls to keep off thieves.

**a) Answer the following questions:**

- 1- Why do some hotels omit number 13 from their rooms?
- 2- When does a mirror foretell death in the family?
- 3- How can one prevent toothache according to the passage?

**b) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- 4- Horse shoes were nailed on some doors in England to ...  
*a- bring good luck.*      *b- prevent evil spirits*      *c- keep off diseases*      *d- stop a quarrel*
- 5- Carrying a potato, according to the text, protects you against...  
*a- thieves*                      *b- toothache*                      *c- misfortune*                      *d- rheumatism*

**45. Read the passage then answer the following questions:-**

It is a disturbing fact that many different wild animals throughout the world are in danger. The reasons for this are many and varied, but we must blame pollution, pesticides, the disturbance of the animal's natural environment and man's greed.

Industry has grown enormously, and it has become common practice for factories to dispose of waste matter in streams, canals and rivers, causing great loss of river life. Modern agricultural methods include using pesticides, which effectively control insects classified as pests, but which also destroy many that are not. An increase in population has meant more buildings, more vehicles, more pollution... and with it the destruction of much of the countryside that provide shelters for wild animals. To satisfy man's selfish desires the polar bear in North America is under threat hunted by sportsmen; whales are killed worldwide for the oil and food they yield. These are only a few of the species under threat.

But the problem is receiving worldwide recognition, and some action is being taken. For example pollution in the River Thames has been greatly reduced; trading in some furs has been forbidden; and organizations like "friends of the Earth" do valuable work in this deserving cause.

**a) Answer the following questions:**

- 1- Why are many wild animals facing danger nowadays? Give three reasons
- 2- Why are many whales hunted throughout the world?
- 3- What does the organization "Friends of the Earth" work on?

**b) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- 4- It has become common practice for factories to dispose their waste in streams and rivers. This means that factories .....  
*a- deliver their waste to streams, canals and rivers*      *b- get over their waste in streams, canals and rivers*  
*c- get rid of their waste in streams, canals and rivers*      *d- store their waste in streams and rivers*
- 5- The underlined word "many" refers to.....  
*a- pesticides*                      *b-pests only*      *c- agricultural methods*                      *d- insects other than pests*

**46. Read the passage then answer the following questions:-**

Usually a person, who keeps putting his hand on one of his pockets as if to make sure that something valuable is still there, attracts a thief's attention.

A friend of mine once had an amusing experience on a bus. He rarely travels by bus because he has been driving his car for many years. But it so happened that his car broke down near his home. He was going to Omar Afandi to buy a television after he had taken out of the bank two thousand



pounds that would cover the price of the set. He put the money in an envelope in one of his pockets and got on a bus. He met an old friend on the bus and had a conversation with him. Unconsciously, every now and then he put his hand on his pocket to make sure that the envelope was still there. But suddenly he felt it had gone.

He looked at the faces of the people around him but could not know which one was the thief. He did not lose his nerve and with a smile he said to his friend. "A foolish thief has taken from my pocket the envelope which is full of newspaper cuttings about a subject I am going to write an article about for my paper. I think the fool thought it was full of money." Every body heard what he said. My friend looked down and saw his envelope under the feet of the passengers. He picked it up. As he was anxious to count the money in it, he left the bus at the next stop. He was happy to find the two thousand pounds still in the envelope.

a) Answer the following questions:

- 1- Why does my friend rarely travel by bus?
- 2- Why did my friend put his hand on his pockets every now and then?
- 3- Where did my friend find his lost envelope?

b) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 4- The coloured television would cost.....  
a- more than two thousand pounds.                      b- less than two thousand pounds.  
c- less than one thousand pounds.                      d- exactly one thousand pounds.
- 5- My friend got off the bus at the next stop.....  
a- to count the money                      b- because he was happy  
c- because he arrived to Omar Affandi                      d- to call the police.

**47. Read the passage then answer the following questions:-**

A clever person used to mean a person who would exert efforts to achieve a legitimate aim. Hence, a clever pupil is a bright one who makes the best of his educational chances. A clever lawyer is one who handles the law so as to prove that his client is in the right. A clever doctor gives the right diagnosis for his patients and prescribes the right medicine for them. This is perfectly feasible in a simple society, which will allow a good number of people to do their best to succeed in their pursuits or better their life conditions.

But in a society that has grown in complexity so that only the fittest can survive the term has taken a new meaning. If two persons have one chance, the cleverer of them is the one who can push the other out of the way to secure the chance for him.

Worse still a clever person might twist it wrong to make it look right. A clever lawyer in the sense of the word is he who manages to prove the innocence of a wrong doer. A doctor who entices more patients to go to him and consequently makes more money out of them would be a clever doctor. A company whose products are not much in demand, employs a clever propagandist to increase its sales. There are clever men both in commerce and in politics. Even in government offices there are clever social climbers that get all gains with the least efforts.

Yet, there are still honest people in society who have a reputation for doing what they are convinced is right.

a) Answer the following questions:

- 1- Why would a modern man resent being described as clever?
- 2- How would a clever man in simple societies win a competition?
- 3- What happens when chances are limited in a society?

b) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 4- An honest doctor .....  
a) makes as much money as he can from his patients.                      b) gives the right diagnosis.  
c) entices more patients to go to him.                      d) prescribes the wrong medicine .
- 5- A suitable title for the passage is.....  
a) a simple society                      b) honest and dishonest people                      c) a chance for oneself                      d) life conditions

**48. Read the passage then answer the following questions:-**

History is the past experience of mankind. More exactly, history is the memory of the past experience as it has been preserved, largely in written records. The subject matter of history is the significant past, meaning the institutions and individual actions that affect the experience and development of whole communities.

Traditionally, history has focused on the actions of governments, their leaders, and the conflicts among them - in other words political and diplomatic history. In the last hundred years the scope of historical interest has broadened to include the history of ideas and the patterns and trends in economic and social life that characterize or influence society as a whole.

The study of history has been regarded either as a branch of the humanities or as a social science. Actually, in method as well as in subject matter, history belongs to both of these branches

of learning. As a social science history deals with all the various fields of human experience that are treated separately in political science, sociology, anthropology, and economics.

History is a subject to the standard of social science as an attempt to establish objective truth about man and society; at the same time the historian's work of synthesis and interpretation requires some imagination which makes it nearer to the arts. The historical narrative is a form of literature. Furthermore, much of the content of historical study has to do with man's humanistic experience in intellectual and cultural spheres. History is sub-divided geographically by countries, and the subjects it deals with are also divided into the political, diplomatic, economic and cultural aspects of human experience. Biography is a branch of history that focuses on the life of great historical figures. Histories of religion, science, philosophy... are all types of historical studies.

**a) Answer the following questions:**

- 1- How has the study of history developed?
- 2- " History is a multi- sided discipline" Explain with reference to the text.
- 3- Find words in the passage which mean : a) important b) the story of a person's life

**b) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

4 - History is the study of.....

- a) *personal events*      b) *social science*      c) *the great past experiences of mankind*      d) *diplomacy*

5 - " The historical narrative is a form of literature" means that.....

- a) *it is unreal.*      b) *the historian is not objective.*  
c) *the historian analyses and interprets events with imagination.*      d) *the historian merely copies events.*

**49. Read the passage then answer the following questions:-**

You don't need to look back twenty years to realize the Tremendous developments in science and technology and how these advances are changing the lifestyle of millions of people all over the world .Although the T.V and video were there in those days ,no one had heard then of those wonderful remote control units that turn the equipment on and off helping us to choose our entertainment with the least physical effort.

There are many other effects of technology that made our life more comfortable. You no longer worry about washing the dishes; your dishwashing machine can take care of that. If you want a hot meal, you just pop your favourite food into the microwave oven and it is ready in minutes. If you need to send an urgent message, just write it down and send it through your fax machine. Passenger planes fly nonstop to different parts of the world and their pilots can find time to relax as the computers do most of the hard work for them. This all leaves people more time to enjoy themselves and it also explains the remarkable current progress in the leisure industry.

Leisure today is big business. Just read the advertisement in your newspaper. You just won't believe the variety; you will find something to fit all incomes and tastes. As robots take over the work of people in industry, as communications across the world became faster., and while technology continues to create ways of persuading us to work less and enjoy ourselves more, so the leisure industry will play a far more important role in the lives of us all.

**a) Answer the following questions:**

- 1- Give three examples showing how technology affects our life.
- 2- Why will leisure industry have an important role in our-life?
- 3- Find in the text words which mean:      a- put      b- convincing

**b) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

4- Due to modern technology, the lifestyle has changed.....

- a- *20 years ago*      b- *within the last 20 years*  
c- *before the last 20 years*      d- *in more than 20 years*

5- Leisure today is.....ever before.

- a- *more expensive than*      b- *less expensive than*  
c- *as expensive as*      d- *much more varied in costs than*

**50. Read the passage then answer the following questions:-**

Dr. Christina, from a medical school in Brazil, is visiting the Middleton Medical School to give a talk on new medicines. She is one of a team of doctors and pharmacists who work in the Amazon Forest. They work to find out about the methods which local people use to treat diseases. Local people use medicines, which come from plants and the team wants to learn about these plants and study them to find the active component. Then they plan to experiment with them.

Plant medicines were used for treating illness very long ago, and they are still common in many parts of the world. These plant medicines are safer and cheaper than scientific medicines, and they work just as well for many diseases.

However, many people still use scientific medicines. Dr. Christina says that we are too dependent on scientific medicines, which can be dangerous and make people ill. Some diseases have become resistant to them. If the medicines stop killing bacteria and viruses, then they are **more dangerous than useful. Many doctors do not recommend plant medicines but this is because**



- 1- How heavy is your brain?
- 2- What makes you feel pain?
- 3- Where does your brain get its information?

b) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 4- Your brain usually analyses information from the senses....  
*a- quite carelessly      c- rather slowly      b- very quickly      d- fairly regularly*
- 5- To have a proper taste, the brain needs messages from the....  
*a- tongue and the nose                      b- mouth and the eyes*  
*c- eyes, feelings and the mouth          d- eyes, the nose and the tongue*

**53. Read the passage then answer the following questions:-**

The neighbours closest to my house are my favourite people. The man is a retired army officer and his wife is still working for the nearby university. They are very hospitable and usually invite friends to lunch. It is particularly enjoyable to wake up on a Friday morning to the sounds of their music playing which are really quite artistic. However, I also love to hear them laughing when they make a mistake in their music playing. Besides music, carpentry is still the man's main interest, and most days he practices his hobby in his work space in the garden, making an artistic piece of furniture.

My neighbours are ideal to live next door to, because they can be very helpful if I need them. I respect them as they never interfere in my private life and I behave with them in the same way. We have helped each other with numerous emergencies such as fire and car accident. We also cooperate with each other in little ways such as bringing in the mail, when one of us is away. We sometimes meet when they invite me over to coffee, with some of their friends who are usually very interesting people; poets, painters, professors and other lively persons whom I enjoy meeting. Sometimes we go out together to share some special occasions such as the 6th October, when we watch the fireworks display. Apart from this, we simply live next door to each other peacefully, side by side.

a) Answer the following questions:

- 1- Give one reason why the writer likes his neighbours.
- 2- What hobbies do the writer's neighbours practise?
- 3- Why does the writer respect his neighbours?

b) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 4- The underlined word usually line 3 means.....  
*a- always                      b- seldom                      c- many times                      d- never*
- 5- the writer's neighbours are ideal because they .....  
*a- have ideas                      b- are perfect                      c- are unbearable                      d- are troublesome*

**54. Read the passage then answer the following questions:-**

One year an agricultural expert visited a poor village in India. His purpose was to improve agriculture and food production in the village. The village relied for food on the two crops of rice and vegetables it grew each year. The villagers worked very hard during the planting and harvesting seasons, but their crops were sometimes poor and insufficient because of the weather. The expert told the head of the village that he could give the villagers a new type of rice, which would produce double the quantity.

The head of the village was delighted and agreed to try it out. The villagers planted the new rice and when they harvested it, it produced double the quantity. When the expert returned after the first crop, he was pleased to see the villagers so happy. The expert returned later to see if the second crop had been equally good. This time he found the fields empty. The villagers were sitting around playing cards and taking the life easy.

When he asked the head of the village about the second crop, he replied, "We didn't need to plant a second crop because we had enough rice after the first crop. So we are relaxing and enjoying ourselves". The expert realized it was useless to tell the head of the village that he had not given them the new rice so that they could spend half a year without working

a) Answer the following questions:

- 1- Why did the expert go to the Indian village?
- 2- Were the fields cultivated when the expert visited the village for the second time?
- 3- Find words in the passage which mean:      a- kind                      b- depend on

b) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 4- It was difficult for the villagers to find enough rice because.....  
*a- the first crop was not enough                      b- the second crop was not enough*  
*c- both crops were not enough                      d- the villagers were too poor to buy enough food*
- 5- The agricultural expert .....  
*a- told the villagers that it was useless to spend half a year with no work*

*b- thought not to give the villagers the new rice again  
d- was pleased because the villagers were relaxing*

*c- told the head of the village that his help was useless*

**55. Read the passage then answer the following questions:-**

A goal is something you want to achieve. First, decide what your goal is. For example, do you want to pass a test? Do you want to be a doctor? When you have decided on your goal, write it down on paper and look at it every day. Then decide what you must do to succeed.

Some people never reach their goal because they think it is impossible. But you must always believe that your goals are possible. Don't think, "This test is difficult. I'll probably fail". Instead, think, "This test is difficult, but I've worked hard and I will pass it". Most people are successful at things they enjoy. So always try to enjoy your work. Keep looking at the goal you wrote on paper and think how happy you will be when you succeed. Think about that happiness while you are working and you will enjoy your work.

**a ) Give short answers to the following questions:**

**1-What is this passage about?**

**2-What should you do when you have written your goal on paper?**

**3-Why do some people not reach their goal?**

**b ) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

**4-What is the opposite of pass?**

*a) succeed      b) fail      c) lose      d) miss*

**5-What kind of things are most people successful at?**

*a) Things that are easy.      b) Things that are difficult.  
c) Things that they enjoy doing.      d) Things they work hard*

## 4 - Paragraph Writing

### القواعد العامة لكتابة موضوع التعبير

يعتبر موضوع التعبير من أصعب الاسئلة التي تواجه الطالب ولذلك الحصول علي درجة التعبير كاملة ليس بالامر السهل. وبناء علي ذلك فقد تم تخصيص هذا الجزء ليكون عون للطالب ووسيلة للتدريب المكثف علي كتابة موضوع التعبير بحيث يكتسب الطالب الخبرة اللازمة للتعامل مع هذا السؤال وكذلك يكتسب مهارة الكتابة. وهذا الامر لا يتحقق الا بالتدريب المستمر علي كتابة موضوعات التعبير ونحن هنا نوفر هذه الفرصة عليك أن تتبع التالي جيدا :

أولا :- الامام بقدر معقول من الثروة اللغوية مع حفظ ما يتسني لك من التعبيرات الشائعة.  
ثانيا :- موضوع التعبير هو عبارة عن عدة جمل مترابطة في المعني ولذا كان لزاما عليك ان تعرف البناء السليم للجمل الخبرية. (كل ما ذكر في الترجمة) ثالثا :- يجب مراعاة القواعد العامة لكتابة موضوع التعبير وهي :

- 1- أن تترك مسافة تعادل خمسة احرف في السطر الاول فقط من الموضوع.
- 2- ان تبدأ كل جملة بحرف Capital كبير وواضح.
- 3- أن تضع (.) واضحة في نهاية كل جملة .
- 4- ابدأ الموضوع بـ **topic sentence** أي جملة رئيسية تحتوي في مجملها علي فكرة الموضوع.
- 5- أن تراعي الترابط والتنسيق العام بين أفكار الموضوع .
- 6- ان تستخدم الزمن الصحيح والمناسب لنوعية الموضوع الذي تكتبه فقد يكون في المضارع وقد يكون في الماضي أو المستقبل أو خليط بينهم.
- 7- تجنب استخدام الجمل المعقدة والتي تحتوي علي مفردات وتركيبات صعبة قد توقعك في أخطاء أنت في غني عنها وعليك باستخدام الجمل البسيطة والسهلة في المعني.
- 8- خصص صفحة كاملة أو صفحتين للموضوع في ورقة الامتحان ويفضل دائما أن تترك سطر عند كتابة الموضوع.
- 9- اجتهد في تحسين خطك وذلك بترك مسافة بين كل كلمة واخري فهذا يعطي انطباعا طيبا للمصحح

### وينبغي تقسيم موضوع التعبير الى :

- 1 - البداية (المقدمة)
- 2- النهاية (the end)
- 3 - الموضوع (subject matter)

### (1) المقدمة :

- 1- جملة عامة عن الموضوع يفهم القارئ من خلالها ما يدور حوله الموضوع.
- 2- حكمة أو مثل أو حكاية.
- 3- تعريف الموضوع .
- 4- اقتباس.
- 5 - سؤال عام حول الموضوع

### جمل افتتاحية تصلح لموضوعات نافعة ( ايجابية ) ( خاص بالطالب المتوسط أو دون المتوسط )

ملحوظة : نضع في الفراغ الموجود في هذه التعبيرات كلمة او عبارة تمثل الموضوع :

1

We all agree that ..... is one of the most important things in our life and has it is vital role nowadays .  
نتفق جميعا أن ..... واحد من أهم الأشياء في حياتنا وله دورا حيويا هذه الايام.

2

We all admit the importance and necessity of ..... in our life. في حياتنا ..... كلنا نقر باهمية وضرورة.....

3

No wonder if we say that ..... has (have) its good and positive effects on us.

لا عجب إذا قلنا أن ..... له آثار طيبة وايجابية علينا جميعا.

4

We all agree that .... is very necessary and plays an important part in our life.

كلنا نتفق أن ..... ضروري جدا ويلعب دورا هاما في حياتنا .

5

We should put into consideration that ..... has (have) become one of the most important things in everyone's life.. يجب أن نضع في الاعتبار ان ..... قد أصبح واحدا من أهم الاشياء في حياة كل شخص..

6

In my opinion, ..... is really important and necessary nowadays. It may have good and positive effects on all of us. I think so because ..... may bring all the good to our society.

في رأيي ..... هو حقا مهم وضروري هذه الايام وقد يكون له الاثر الطيب والايجابي علينا جميعا وانني اعتقد ذلك لان ..... قد يعود بالنفع علي مجتمعنا.

7

To begin with, I'd like to say that we, Egyptians, always react well to what is good and react badly to what is bad. Thus, we all agree to and encourage .....

في البداية أود أن أقول أننا نحن المصريين دائما نستجيب جيدا لما نراه جيدا وكذلك لنا رد فعل سيء لكل ما هو سيء وبناء على ذلك كلنا نوافق على ونشجع .....

No one can deny that ..... plays a very important role in our life.

\* لا يستطيع أحد أن ينكر أن ..... يلعب دوراً هاماً في حياتنا.

There is no doubt that this subject has affected our thought and caused a great impact on us.

\* لا شك أن هذا الموضوع قد أثر على فكرنا وأحدث تأثيراً بالغاً علينا.

In an attempt to deal with this subject, we have to take into account every bit of information that makes it clear and understood.

\* عند محاولة تناول هذا الموضوع يجب أن نضع في الاعتبار كل جزء من معلومة تجعل هذا الموضوع واضحاً ومفهوماً.

### جمل افتتاحية تصلح لموضوعات ضارة ( سلبية ) ( خاص بالطالب المتوسط أو دون المتوسط )

1) I see that ..... stands for an obstacle in the way of our progress so our state spares no effort to put an end to it. إنني أرى أن ..... يمثل عقبة في طريق تقدمنا ومن ثم فدولتنا لا تدخر جهداً لكي تضع حداً له.

2) In my point of view, ..... is really serious and harmful nowadays. It may have bad and negative effects on all of us. I think so because ..... may bring all the evil to our society. من وجهة نظري ... هو فعلاً خطير وضار هذه الأيام وقد يكون له آثار سيئة وسلبية علينا جميعاً . وانني اعتقد ذلك لان ..... قد يجلب الشرور إلى مجتمعنا.

3) There is no doubt that ..... is one of the most dangerous phenomena in our life and has its bad and negative effects nowadays. مما لا شك فيه أن ..... هي واحدة من أخطر الظواهر في حياتنا وكذلك له آثاره السيئة والسلبية في وقتنا هذا.

4) Frankly Speaking, ..... is one of the worst things in our life. Thus, our state spares no effort to fight it... بصراحة القول ..... واحداً من أسوأ الأشياء في حياتنا . وعلى هذا فإن دولتنا لا تدخر جهداً لكي تكافح وتقاوم هذا الشيء.

### (2) الوسيط (الموضوع) :

1- يجب أن تكون الجمل واضحة ومتوازنة .

2- تجنب الجمل الطويلة بشكل عام . وأن تختار الكلمات المناسبة للتعبير عن الفكرة وتجنب استخدام الكلمات الغريبة .

3- الاستخدام الصحيح لعلامات الترقيم (punctuation) .

4- تجنب الكتابة بضمير المتكلم الا إذا كان الموضوع يخص شخص لكاتب الموضوع مثل موضوع My favourite game – لعبتي المفضلة.

### كيفية الكتابة عن الموضوع

- الجملة التالية يمكن ان توضع وسط الموضوع لربط المقدمة بالموضوع الرئيسي وهي تناسب جميع الموضوعات.

- In addition to what I have written about .....before, I can add that.....

- ابدأ جملتك بالعبارات التالية للتوكيد:

|   |                           |
|---|---------------------------|
| جملة + Everyone knows that                | الجميع يعرفون أن          |
| جملة + I don't exaggerate when I say that | لا أبالغ عندما أقول ان    |
| جملة + I reveal no secret when I say that | لا افشى سرا عندما أقول ان |
| جملة + It can't be denied that            | لا احد يمكنه ان ينكر ان   |
| جملة + It goes without saying that        | غنى عن البيان ان          |
| جملة + It is crystal clear that           | من الواضح تماما أن        |
| جملة + It is known that                   | من المعروف ان             |
| جملة + It is taken for granted that       | من المسلم به ان           |
| جملة + There is no doubt that             | مما لا شك فيه             |

For example, ... / For instance .....

such as او like.....

- عندما تريد أن تعطى مثالا ابدأ جملتك بـ

- عندما تريد أن تعطى مثالا داخل الجملة استخدم

- عندما تريد أن تضيف فكره جديده تبدأ بـ...

|                       |                  |                             |                     |
|-----------------------|------------------|-----------------------------|---------------------|
| Above all             | وفوق كل ذلك      | It is worth mentioning that | من الجدير بالذكر ان |
| And as a result       | ونتيجة لذلك      | Last but not least          | وأخيرا وليس آخرا    |
| Another thing is that | شيء آخر هو ان    | More than that              | اكثر من ذلك         |
| At the same time      | في نفس الوقت     | Moreover = further more     | علاوة على ذلك       |
| Concerning            | بخصوص            | On one hand                 | من ناحية            |
| Consequently          | نتيجة لذلك       | On the other hand           | من ناحية أخرى       |
| Hence                 | ومن ثم           | Over and above              | مضافا إلى ذلك       |
| In addition to that   | بالإضافة إلى ذلك | Thus                        | وبناء على ذلك       |

### 3- الخاتمة : The end

غالبا ما تتضمن الخاتمة ملخصا (summary) للآراء التي عبرت عنها أو النتيجة التي وصلت إليها والنتيجة هذه قد تكون نصيحة أو تحذير أو اعطاء رأي أو غيره.

#### جمل ختامية تصلح لموضوعات التعبير (خاص بالطالب المتوسط أو دون المتوسط)

- Finally, it is quite clear that .....(الموضوع) ..... Is really.....(صفة)..
- In brief, I think that ..... is really .....
- To sum up, one can say that ..... is really .....
- I can end my speech by saying that.....
- I can end my speech by saying that we, the citizens should do our best to put an end to this danger which threatens our life and society. (إذا كان الموضوع ضار (مشكلة)
- In the end, I wish I had pointed out all the aspects of this subject and made it clear. في النهاية أتمنى أن أكون وضحت كل جوانب هذا الموضوع وجعلته واضحا
- To conclude, I hope my words were enough to illuminate the most vital sides of this subject. لكي أختتم كلامي فإنني أتمنى أن تكون كلماتي كافية لتوضيح أهم جوانب هذا الموضوع.

#### Important Paragraphs

#### Citizenship & National Unity

Citizenship is one of the most important features of the Egyptian society. All Egyptians are equal. There is no difference between Muslims and Christians. They have the same rights and are to do the same duties .They are the two elements of the nation. All Egyptians always say, "Religion is for Allah and Egypt is for all" This means that there is no distinction between the sons of Egypt due to religion race or colour. Although Christians in Egypt are a minority, they are enjoying all rights and privileges that are given to Muslims who constitute 90% of the population of Egypt. National unity and good relations between Muslims and Christians are not slogans but rather a tangible reality reflected in the unique experience of the people. In all wars and revolutions, we saw Christians and Muslims fighting their enemies in defense of our dear country. Muslims and Christians in Egypt are always partners in joy and annoy. When a Christian gets married, his Muslim friends and neighbours go to the church to attend his wedding party and vice versa. Whenever a Muslim dies, Christians condole his family and vice versa. On feasts, both Muslims and Christians exchange, congratulations, gifts and good so that wishes. Finally, I'd like to point that Egypt will ever remain a homeland for all its sons.

#### The Nile basin crisis

Herodotus said, "Egypt is the gift of the Nile". The Nile is the artery شريان of life in Egypt. We depend mainly on it to irrigate حصة our fields and to drink. So messing around Egypt share التلاعب from the Nile water is a national security case. قضية امن قومي. Throughout history, the great Egyptian rulers paid attention to the Nile and its strategic importance اهمية استراتيجية as part of our national security since the time of ancient Egyptians. Mohamed Ali understood the importance of both Sudan and the Nile sources and thus he expanded in the South before he would go to the East and to the North building his empire.

There have been continuous warnings تحذيرات مستمرة that Israel was and is still messing around in the Nile Basin countries encouraging them to build dams giving them expertise الخبرة needed to do such thing in order to affect Egypt's share from the Nile water.

There is a huge responsibility on us whether a regime or the people. We waste the Nile water using it in useless projects like golf courses and those endless swimming pools everywhere whereas farmers do not have access to clean water and use sewage instead and people across the country can't have a clean glass of water. The official media used to attack the farmers and does not dare to open its mouth against the businessmen who are wasting our precious water in useless



projects and polluting it with their industrial and chemical wastes. I believe the current crisis, the current struggle is an alarm to us all.

Some people believe that we are on the verge of the first water war in the world. However, we can reach a peaceful solution that will make everyone happy if we really want to. We must have real cooperation with the Nile basin countries. We can make them our real allies. **حلفاء** We must stop Israel from messing around us and threatening our national security. We must think in a strategic way to win allies and friends. These African countries need us as much as we need them.

### The River Nile

It is known that Egypt is the gift of the Nile. No doubt, it is the source of our life. In fact, that is true. Without this gift Egypt, would be a desert. The River Nile is the longest river in the world. It provides people with fresh water, which is essential for drinking, washing, agriculture and industry. Agriculture depends on irrigation. Without water, farmers wouldn't be able to grow rice, wheat, maize **ذرة**, fruits, vegetables... etc. The River provides us also with fish, which adds to the food wealth of the country. On the other hand, the High Dam in Aswan is the main factor for generating electricity, which is necessary to push forward the wheels of industry. The River is also a good means of transportation and sports. Ferryboats **مراكب** and cargo **سفن** ships carry people and goods from place to place.

Keeping Nile clean is the responsibility of every Egyptian who cares for a clean and healthy life. Dumping rubbish and throwing factory waste in the river should be stopped completely. When we look at the continuing flow of the river, we should remember our ancient and glorious history and work hard to keep the power of this glory forever. In my opinion, the government should set up a new ministry and call it the Ministry of the Nile to look after the river and grant it every respect, care and attention.

### Water

No body can deny the fact that water is the main source of life. Without water, life on earth would have come to an end. Man, animals and plants would have died. In fact, water is the main factor in the development of countries both in agriculture, industry and all aspects of life. Man can get water from rain, rivers, wells, seas and lakes. To increase the supply of water, reservoirs and dams have been built to store water for the time of need. As the consumption of water is increasing so rapidly, the world may face a shortage in the quantity of water in the near future.

To solve this serious problem, the world should economize the consumption of water especially in agriculture, industry and also in domestic use. In my view, another solution is to have the water recycled to avoid wasting it. More dams and reservoirs should be built. We can obtain water also by desalinating **تحلية** water from seas. Although this is an expensive method, but we can rely on it if necessary.

### Charity Societies

Charity Societies are organizations concerned with helping the poor. Rich people establish them. They do their best to make homeless and poor children live in a reasonable standard. They offer them care in different aspects. They offer the poor medical care free of charge. If they are homeless, charities offer them houses and food.

Businessmen have got a duty towards these societies. They should give them support. They can pay a part of their taxes for these societies. All of us should take part in the activities of these societies. We can donate clothes, money, and food or even we can donate efforts to please these poor children.

To make people trust these charities, honest people only should manage them. Some people refuse to donate anything because they do not trust people who run these societies. After our revolution against corruption, we should revolt against poverty, homelessness and illness. Charities can play a basic role against these problems.

### The Road to success is not straight

We all want to succeed in everything we do. We all have goals in our lives which we aspire to achieve. But the road to success is not always straight. You will have problems on your way. But, if you have determination, you will reach the place called 'success'. Nothing succeeds like success. This is a true saying because we all work for success whose joy can be felt by successful people

and their families and close friends. To succeed in life, you must do your best in achieving your goal. Once you have reached your goal, you must work harder to keep it. But does success have enemies? Yes, the enemies of success are those who know how to succeed but do not have the enthusiasm and hard work to achieve it. Day dreams and bad friends are also enemies of success. Such dreams and people must be avoided. And one last thing we should put into consideration: the more difficulties we face to reach our goals, the happier we feel after reaching them.

### The problem of over – population

We all agree that over population in Egypt is a serious problem. It results in other more serious problems. Our youth can't find a flat to marry in or a suitable job to start their life. There is also a possible shortage of food. Our cities became very crowded; they lack the needed infrastructure for living.

So it has become a must that we should invade the desert. The "Development" project of Dr Farouk Elbaz can be a good start. The government should do its best to encourage people to have small families through public awareness programmes on TV and newspapers. Campaigns should be sent to remote and small villages to offer people information about birth regulation.

### Computers

The invention of computers can be considered the most important event in the modern age. It has been the most important factor in the development in many fields. The computer has a lot of advantages. It can store a lot of information; it can do a lot of calculations in no time. It can pay wages, reserve seats on planes, design buildings, compose music and do many jobs. Doctors also use the computer widely in their job. But it has also some disadvantages. It can waste our time if it is used foolishly or if it is used just for fun. It has also a bad effect on our health specially our sight. It also teaches the children violence through playing computer games. So it is a double-edged weapon.

### Sources of Clean power in Egypt

Egypt has a lot of gifts. It is rich in sunshine, water and man power. The sunshine can be a source of renewable and clean energy. It is useful for the growth of animals and plants as well. It can help in producing solar power. Thus, Egypt can be a developed country using a clean source of energy. Water is also plentiful in Egypt. It can be used in planting vast areas of desert land so that we can increase our food production. There is also wind power that can provide us with clean and cheap electricity. Egypt also has man power which can be a positive productive power if it is made use of. However, if we don't employ man power in a proper way, we may spoil our natural resources. Man is the master of all these resources. Plans should be made to benefit from man power to be able to face any problem in our country.

### Technology in our life

Nowadays technology is everywhere. We all enjoy technology but in different ways. We can travel from one place to another very easily, comfortably and fast. Modern means of transport are now supplied with all means of comfort. Space travel is now more possible than it used to be in the past. One day people may be able to enjoy space journeys.

Technology has also played a role in medical care. Now the computer can be used to check people's health accurately. It is also used for teaching. Students can benefit from the internet in their researches as well. Mobile phones made it easy to communicate with anybody anywhere at any time. Satellite TV enabled us to see what is going on all over the world. No doubt technology has changed our life to the better.

### Sports

"A sound mind is in a sound body". This is a true saying. If someone practises a sport, they will be fit. Practising a sport helps us to carry out our mental and physical tasks efficiently. The ministry of education must give suitable attention to sports in our

schools. Students who get prizes or medals in any sports championship should be encouraged a lot. Schools also should set up sports competitions and offer prizes for the winners. The government must encourage sports. It must set up youth centres and clubs everywhere to enable everyone old or young to practise sports. Sports festivals are a call for peace and love among nations **نداء للمحبة والسلام بين الأمم**. So every country should give due care for taking part in the international championships. **البطولات الدولية**

### Tourism

Tourism is one of the most important earners of foreign currency and national income. Tourists spend a lot of money during their stay in Egypt. They like to visit Egypt to enjoy the sun shine, and the wonderful historic places. They like to visit the Citadel, the Pyramids, Luxor and Aswan. They like to see our modern renaissance **نهضتنا الحديثة** as well. We should do our best to encourage tourists to visit us again and again. We should establish cheap hotels and tourist villages along our shores. We should also encourage medical tourism and conference tourism which is clearly successful in Sharm El-Sheikh. We should also take care of the way we deal with tourists. They should be respected and protected from being blackmailed by thugs or beggars. The more tourists come to Egypt, the more we benefit in different ways.

### The role of the youth in development

After 25th January revolution, it has become clear that the youth are the most effective power in the Egyptian society. They managed to put an end to the corrupt system and its leaders. Now the youth should first work hard to achieve success and increase production. When they graduate from their universities they have duties towards their society **لديهم واجب نحو وطنهم**. They can share in the social work by working in the co-operative field. They can share in abolishing illiteracy **محو الأمية** in their villages. They can take part in reclaiming the desert to increase food production. They can join the army to defend their country in case there is a war. They can also help a lot in solving any problem concerning their society. They should work hard for the welfare **رفاهية** of their beloved nation.

### Life in the Future

As long as we live, we have to think. Our life in the future will change completely. Computers and internet will occupy our life. So, instead of wasting time going here and there, we will use the internet to get our needs. Students of the future will get the information they need through their computers which will be available and within the reach of their hands. Housewives can shop through the internet and the housework will be done by certain kind of robots. Most houses will be air conditioned and people won't suffer from the heat of the sun. Our factories will be computerized. There will be better means of communications and transport. Scientists will control the weather, so there will be no floods or drought **جفاف**. But I think man will not change.

### Preventing pollution

It isn't acceptable to be in the third millennium **الألفية الثالثة** and we still pollute our environment. Individuals, companies and factories should find ways to control their waste. Clean streets and roads are the bad need of every citizen, so we shouldn't throw things away in the streets. There must be laws to punish those who break them. Filters should be fixed in factories to help reduce air pollution. It's our environment and everybody should do their best to live a happy life. Keeping the place clean would surely avoid us thousands of infectious diseases that may ruin our life and turn our happiness into mirage. A clean environment improves the public taste. It encourages creativity and hard work. I hope we all will do our best to keep our environment clean.

### Unemployment

Unemployment must be rooted out **تستأصل** because it leads to further poverty. The government is always encouraging investors to invest their money in establishing new projects and shoulder their responsibilities **يتحمل مسنولية** to provide business opportunities for youth. Giant projects such as Six October industrial city, reclaiming Sinai and others with small projects will give a hand to increase different kinds of jobs for those who need them. Banks are also important; they can lend young people small loans with slight interest to help them set up small industries all over Egypt.

When we solve this pressing problem, **المشكلة الملحة** we will eradicate extremism **نستأصل التطرف** and terrorism among those poor young people.

### Zewail and the Femto Second

The secret of a good invention or discovery is simplicity **البساطة**. The Egyptian scientist Dr Ahmed Zewail, the Nobel Prize laureate **حائز** for Chemistry in 1999, managed to discover the smallest unit of time; in other words, "the femto second". This great work will help scientists to see the chemical reactions and discover new and better drugs for curing many fatal diseases such as cancer. On behalf of the Egyptian people, he was awarded the Necklace of The Nile in recognition **إعترافاً** of his amazing achievement **الإنجاز العظيم** that raised Egypt's name high in the sky.

### Importance of Learning English

Language is an important part of your personality, your character and yourself. English is the most important international language. It is the language of science and technology. You can no more get rid of it than your shadow. Knowledge of good English enables you to communicate with foreign friends and countries. It enables you to find a better job because it helps you express **يعبر عن** yourself and deal with tourists freely. We cannot cope with the technological renaissance **النهضة** without learning how to use the computer and internet, so learning English is a must. When you are armed with **مسلح بـ** English, you can understand what is going on around you and you can deal with the knowledge explosion easily **الانفجار المعرفي** without any fear.

### Electricity and its importance

With the help of modern inventions and discoveries, our life became easy and smooth. What is electricity? It's the mysterious power which is produced by various means: e.g. by batteries or generators which provide us with heat, light and sound. It drives machines and different kinds of devices. **أنواع مختلفة من الأجهزة**. The progress, man achieves, depends basically on it. Electricity helps man increase production because it drives our factories. It gives us peace because it illuminates **تنير** our streets, houses, and schools. We can generate electricity from waterfalls, wind and the atomic power as well as the sun. It's a clean and cheap source of energy. Awareness should be spread to cut down its consumption. We have to be thankful to God who gives us the blessing of thinking which led man to the use of electricity because its advantages are endless.

### Women's role in our society

Who are women? They are mothers, daughters, sisters, wives, aunts or grandmothers. God created people as either men or women. Each of them has a different nature and a different role. We all have rights and duties, **حقوق وواجبات**, so we mustn't forget the role of women in the Egyptian society. They form more than 52% of Egypt's population. They can work as teachers, doctors, social workers and many other jobs. Women mustn't forget that bringing up children **تربية الأطفال** is their first role to create sound individuals, able to shoulder **تحمل** their responsibilities. so we can't ignore their role in the progress of Egypt. Without all people's help women and men, we wouldn't achieve the expectations of the new millennium, **الألفية الجديدة**.

### Money

No one can deny that money is a mixed blessing. **نعمة ونقمة** in other words, it is a good servant but a bad master. On the one hand, money helps us to get all our needs but we should not earn it in a dishonest way. With the help of money problems can be solved. Money makes money and with money people can lead a comfortable life. On the other hand money is the root of all evils. For the sake of getting money some people deceive, kill and commit crimes. Wars are waged **تشعل الحروب** and thousands of people are killed because of money. We must all put in mind that money is a means, not a destination.

## The duties of young people towards their parents

It is well-known that we owe much to our parents. ندين بالكثير لأبائنا. They looked after us when we were young. They did their best to provide us with food, clothing, shelter and education. They sat up beside our beds when we were ill. They spared no effort لم يألوا جهدا to give us the best start in life. So it is our duty to love and respect them. We have to take their advice and obey their orders . نطيع since they have experienced life with its ups and downs. It is also our duty to help them in every possible way. We can do the shopping and help them at home. When they grow old, it is our turn to repay their kindness. We should look after them and provide them with every possible comfort. It is truly said that a good turn deserves another. قابلو المعروف بالمعروف.

## How to study

The best way to use time is to plan it, so the skill of making a study plan is very important not only for students but also for every successful man. It saves time and energy توفر الوقت والجهد because you know what to do and when to do it. You don't waste time doing a bit of work here and a bit there. It enables you to see a comprehensive overall picture صورة كاملة وشاملة of your time and how to manage it. A study plan should be flexible and elastic to cope with any sudden circumstances. It should include time for rest and play to keep your mind fresh and your body sound I'd like to say that you can't enjoy your life unless you plan it. . Finally, Let study have its time and enjoy the rest of your time. Don't forget that life is for living, not for suffering.

## Protecting local products

We should be proud of our country and its local products. المنتجات المحلية. Our local products are usually cheaper than the imported ones and sometimes better. In addition, buying our local products creates job opportunities for our youth and brings hard currency which we need to import our needs. There is no doubt that our products have the Egyptian taste which appeals to us and Cope with our nature and way of living. Not only this but also they best cope with our hot and humid weather, with our habits of eating and doing the daily work. But manufacturers should do their best to improve local products. A good product will be sold easily and can also be exported. Finally, buying our local products increases our national income and raises our standard of living.

## Terrorism

Terrorism is no doubt the enemy of the whole world today. No part of the world hasn't witnessed a bomb attack or killing of a prominent figure عضو بارز of society. As it is said, "Terrorism has no home or eyes." In order to eradicate terrorism, a lot of things should be done. First, Justice and democracy should spread, every citizen should feel that he gets his rights and has the ability to express his ideas without fear or persecution. اضطهاد Writers, mosques and churches have a great role in this battle. they have to find approaches to change terrorists' attitudes واتجاهات and spread the right thought. الفكر الصحيح.

Equality among people, Muslims and Christians, the White and the Black, should be the base which make one feel citizenship. يشعر بالمواطنة. A law should be issued to ban distorting religions قانون يحظر and other people's thoughts. Finally comes the role of police to shoulder their responsibilities.

## English and The Internet

The importance of the Internet grows rapidly in all fields of human life, including not only research and education but also marketing and trade as well as entertainment and hobbies. This implies يتضمن that it becomes more and more important to know how to use Internet services and, as a part of this, to read and write English. But although Internet services themselves are easy to learn and use, you will find yourself isolated معزول on the Internet if you are not familiar with English. This means that knowledge or lack of knowledge of English المعرفة أو نقصها باللغة is one of the most severe factors العوامل الهامة that cause interest. Learning to use a new Internet service or user interface واجهة استخدام may take a few hours, a few days, or even weeks, but it takes years to learn a language so that you can use it in a fluent and self-confident manner. Of course, when you know some English,

you can learn more just by using it on the Internet. So, English and the internet became two faces of the same coin. وجهان لعملة واحدة.

### The advantages and disadvantages of modern technology

Our life today is quite different from life fifty years ago. Life in the past was very simple and easy. In the past people used animals to go from place to place. People died from many diseases which they could not cure. Today, thanks to بفضل modern science and technology, there are many inventions which have made man's life easier and more comfortable. Modern means of transport help us to travel long distances in a very short time. The progress تقدم in medicine has enabled us to find a cure for most diseases. We also have pure نقية water and electric supply.

However modern technology has several disadvantages. The most noticeable ملحوظة disadvantage is pollution. Pollution is very harmful to man's life and can cause many diseases. Man now depends too much on machines. There are a lot of people who can't find jobs because we use machines to do most of our work. Many people nowadays suffer from stress / توتر and worry. Some people may have a nervous breakdown انهيار عصبي.

### Living in space

Next summer I am going to travel to space with three friends. We are going to have some training at first. The training will be long and difficult. You must be fit لائق جسميا in order to survive in space. We are going to take some things with us like canned معلب food and bottles of water.

In space there are a lot of problems. There is no gravity الجاذبية in space. It is hard to live without gravity. We will stay in the space shuttle all the time. We will miss our families. We will try to keep ourselves busy by reading books or listening to music. Living in space will be an exciting experience in spite of its disadvantages.

### Lifelong learning

Lifelong learning goes on for life مدي الحياة, from the time you graduate يتخرج until you retire يتقاعد . This is necessary as employers أصحاب العمل do not offer permanent دائمة jobs. We must learn the skills required المهارات المطلوبة for different jobs. Companies pay a lot to provide training for their employees العاملين. Lifelong learning helps us to acquire the knowledge المعرفة and skills needed in the labour market.

Distance learning التعلم عن بعد is a method طريقة of study that helps us to continue our learning. We need to continue learning to keep up with نواكب the latest developments التطورات in different fields. Human knowledge is increasing all the time. If we do not update نظور our knowledge, we will not be able to live in today's world. In fact, lifelong learning is important to everyone.

### How we can help to protect and improve the environment

Environmental pollution التلوث البيئي is a very serious problem nowadays. This pollution causes great damage أضرار كبيرة to the environment and all living things. There are a lot of things we can do to preserve يحافظ على the environment. Factories should be moved to land outside cities. A great number of trees should be planted along the sides of the roads. Trees take in carbon dioxide and release oxygen, so they help to clean the air.

The government should pass laws to reduce the number of cars on the roads. We have to spread awareness ينشر الوعي among ordinary people of the importance of preserving the environment. We must teach young children how to keep the environment clean. If we succeed in preserving (conserving) the environment, our children and grandchildren can enjoy the world we live in. Preserving the environment has become a very important issue مسألة هامة in the modern world.

### Recycling

Many societies reuse materials that are thrown away. Materials ranging from precious metals معادن ثمينة to plastic spoons, can be reused. This recycling process extracts تستخلص the original material المادة الأصلية and uses it in new products. In general, using recycled materials المواد المعاد تصنيعها to make new products costs less and requires يتطلب less energy than using new materials. The most commonly recycled waste product is printed المطبوعة materials.

Glass is a material which is economical to recycle. The recycled glass is melted **يصهر** and formed into new products. Certain types of nuclear waste **النفايات النووية** can be recycled. Rare materials, such as gold and silver, are recycled because getting new supplies is expensive. It reduces pollution because recycling a product creates less pollution than producing a new one. Most experts **الخبراء** state **يبينون** that the economic consequences **النتائج الاقتصادية** of recycling are positive in the long term.

### Value of reading

Reading is very important. It is the food of the mind. Through reading, we benefit from **يستفيد من** the experience **خبرة** of other people. Reading has a good effect on our behaviour **سلوك**. It helps us to acquire good qualities **صفات**. It enables us to understand the world that we live in. It helps us to solve our problems in life.

Through reading, we get a lot of information about the progress in science and technology. By reading, we never feel lonely **يشعر بالوحدة**. In fact, books are the best friends. Reading helps us to develop our characters **شخصيات** and widen our horizons **آفاق**. Mrs. Mubarak has started the project 'Reading for All'. This project aims at spreading **نشر** the habit of reading among young children. It also aims at developing the abilities **قدرات** of young children to become good citizens **مواطنين** in the future. Many public libraries have been set up in towns and villages. This will enrich our cultural life and create **يخلق** generations **أجيال** of scientists and thinkers **مفكرين**.

### Life in big cities

Life in big cities is very hard. People there suffer from many problems such as over-population, housing problems and crowded means of transport. It takes a very long time to go from one place to another. There is very little cooperation **تعاون** among people. overcrowding **الزحام الشديد** results in **يؤدي إلى** many accidents.

Pollution caused by car fumes is a major cause of many diseases. The air is unclean and impure **غير نقي**. There are no gardens or green areas where people can spend nice time. The noise from cars and machines also make life in big cities unbearable **لا تحتمل**. Great efforts are needed to solve the problems in big cities. People should think of going to new cities built in the desert or the country.

### Over-population

Over-population is a very serious problem. Egypt has been suffering from this problem for a long time now. The increase in population has led to many other problems such as shortage of food, **نقص الطعام**, overcrowded means of transport, **ازدحام وسائل المواصلات**, lack **نقص** of job opportunities **فرص العمل** and the problem of housing **الإسكان**. There aren't enough houses, jobs or food for all people. If we continue to increase in this way, we may face starvation **مجاعة/الموت جوعا**.

Great efforts are made to solve this problem. The government does its best to convince **تقنع** the people of the importance of birth control **تحديد النسل** and family planning **تنظيم الأسرة**. Vast areas **مناطق** of the desert land have been reclaimed. New cities and communities have been built. Mass media are doing their best to persuade **تقنع** people to participate effectively **بصورة فعالة** in solving this problem.

### جميع أسئلة ( Paragraph ) ثانوية عامة من 2000

- 1.You have just come back from a school trip. Write a paragraph describing how you spent time there. (2000)
2. Describe what you would like a tourist to see in your country. (2001)
3. The role of the youth in our society. (2001)
- 4.How to solve the problem of over population (1988)
- 5.Suggest some ways that may clear the traffic jam into your town or city(1988)
- 6.The number of tourists in Egypt has been growing in recent years. Tell how Egypt could be a big centre for tourism (1989).
- 7.The recent changes that have taken place in Egypt (1989).

8. Describe a place you know which is worth visiting. Choose any place you like such as a city, a museum, a historical place, a building, an airport, a factory, a park etc. (1991)  
*Try to cover the following points: - where the place is - why you think it is interesting - what you like most about it*
9. Yesterday you saw a man break into your neighbours' house while you were out. He left later on carrying some of their possessions. The police want you to write a statement, describing exactly what you saw. Include a description of the man, how he entered the house and what you saw him carrying. (1991)
10. Your plans for the future. (Azhar 2001)  
You may expand the following ideas:  
*- passing the final exam  
 - getting high marks to join one of the top faculties  
 - being humble and avoiding to be a money-maker*
11. "How to make your city a better place to live in" (Azhar 2002)  
You may expand the following ideas :  
*- state the problem / city dirty / need to do something  
 - start recycling / create more parks / plant trees  
 - all work together / city better place*
12. "Manners make a man" (Azhar 2004)  
You may expand the following ideas :  
*- good manners and bad manners  
 - gain people's respect / set a good example / sense of responsibility / love of God*
13. What do you think of the French law that forbids Muslim female students from wearing their veils at schools? (Azhar 2004)  
*- obey God's orders / protect women and girls / conservative / interfere in personal beliefs / self-respect and personal decisions*
14. The advantages of buying local products labeled "Made in Egypt". (2002)  
Guiding points  
*- great variety – cheaper prices – work opportunities – Egyptian taste – help local industries – national income*
15. Keeping a clean environment is the responsibility of every citizen. (2002)  
Guiding points :  
*- role of the individual – air pollution – water pollution – noise – hygiene and public health*
16. You have received an invitation from an international space agency to travel in space. The trip will take one month, however you can only take four things with you. Describe your feelings, tell us about the four things you would take and why they are so necessary for you. Tell us about the first person you would tell about your trip and why you chose him / her. (2003)
17. Some people like life in the countryside because it is calm, peaceful and away from pollution. Others like life in the city because it is more lively, more entertaining and faster. Which kind of life do you prefer. State why. (2003)
18. The continuous rise in prices has become a national problem for most Egyptian families. (2004)  
Write about :  
*- the reasons for the increase in prices of most goods – the role the government plays in controlling the market – some suggestions on how to overcome this problem*
19. Choose a job that you would like to do after you graduate. Write about your reasons, advantages of working in this career, and the skills and training required for it. (2004)
20. "Computers in Society" (2005)  
*Personal computers first appeared in the mid 1970s, and since then they have changed our lives forever. How? What about the different areas in which we use computers: Education, business, entertainment, government, communication, offices, .....etc*
21. A lot of things we use every day like electric lights, television, computers, telephones and mobile phones, etc are so much a part of our daily lives that we take them for granted. Write about:



What would life be like if they hadn't been invited ? Which one would you miss most ? (2005)

22. "Thinking about the future" What will life be like in the future ? Will it be better, worse or the same as now ? What do you hope about the future ? Think about : technology, medicine , education , war and peace , food , work , people and other things of your choice. (2006)

23. "What should be done for children's welfare ?" (2006)

You may use the following :

*-duty – government – interest – children / build – kindergartens –provide – means of entertainment / parents – teachers – set good examples / TV programmes – carefully chosen / instruction – religion – develop – virtues*

24. Social work is a means through which Egyptian youth can help society (2007)

You may use the following words :

*Share – neighbourhood – educate the illiterate – job opportunity – better life – care for orphans – bring happiness*

25. "The advantages and disadvantages of running your own business"

You may use the following ideas :

*Starting your own business – being your own boss – flexible working hours – gaining all the profits – taking risks – suffering losses – need a lot of money – expensive equipment*

26."The various ways through which people can keep good health and fitness" (2008)

You may use the following ideas :

*-the value of exercising a sport regularly – going on a diet and eating healthy food –walking as a priceless and easy exercise*

27. " A day trip or a school outing that you enjoyed" (2008)

You may use the following ideas :

*-being with colleagues and teachers – open areas – playing games – having fun*

28. Write a paragraph of about 100 words about: (1st 2011)

*How to share in the progress of our country*

29. Write a paragraph of about 100 words about: (2nd 2011)

*A day you will never forget*

30. Write a paragraph of about 100 words about: (Sudan 2012)

*"The internet is one of the most recent inventions in our life."*

31. Write a paragraph of about 100 words about ... (1st 2012)

*"Do today's young people show enough respect towards older people?"*

34. Write a paragraph of about 100 words about the following: (2nd 2012)

*"If you could go back to some time and place in the past, when and where would you go?"*

35. 'Write a paragraph of about 100 words about: (1st 2013)

*The different ways people can do to save energy*

## 5 - Letter Writing

### أنواع الخطاب

#### 1- الخطاب الرسمي Formal letter

- الخطاب الرسمي أو التجاري هو خطاب يرسل إلي شركة / مؤسسة / بنك / جهة رسمية لغرض معين مثل الحصول علي وظيفة / قرض / طلب عضوية وعادة يكتب الخطاب الرسمي بلغة رسمية تختلف عن لغة الخطاب الذي يرسل لصديق:  
**أهم موضوعاته:**

(ج)- التماس Petition

(ب)- شكوى Complaint

(أ)- طلب وظيفة Job application

#### كيفية كتابة الخطاب الرسمي

- 1- اكتب عنوانك و التاريخ في أعلي يمين الصفحة
- 2- ويمكنك إضافة رقم التليفون و البريد الإلكتروني
- 3 - يكتب اسم وعنوان الشخص أو الشركة التي تكتب لها في الجانب الأيسر من الصفحة بعد عنوانك مباشرة
- 4- ابدأ الخطاب باستخدام لقب الشخص
- 5- في الفقرة الأولى اكتب بوضوح الغرض من ارسال الخطاب
- 6- لا تستخدم اختصارات في الأفعال

Your dress/date  
Your Phone No.  
E-mail address

Name and address of the Company/ person you are writing to

اسم وعنوان الشخص أو الشركة

Dear Mr./ Mrs./ Dear Sir or Madam,

( موضوع الخطاب Letter details )

Yours Sincerely,

Name and Signature اسم وتوقيع مرسل الخطاب

#### 2- الخطاب الودي (غير الرسمي) Informal letter

و هو مرسل الي أحد الاقارب ( Relative ) أو صديق ( Friend ).  
و أهم موضوعاته:

(د)- مواساة Consolation

(ج)- شكر Thanking

(ب) -تهنئة Congratulation

(أ)- دعوة Invitation

العنوان (من الأصغر للأكبر)  
التاريخ

اسم المرسل إليه + Dear

المقدمة

الموضوع

الخاتمة

Yours sincerely, / Best Wishes,

اسم الراسل

## عناصر الخطاب

### 1- العنوان

ويكتب في اعلي الصفحة من ناحية اليمين ويكتب من الاصغر الي الاكبر (بمعني رقم المنزل – اسم الشارع ثم اسم الحي او المدينة ثم اذا كان الخطاب خارج مصر نكتب Egypt مع ملاحظة وضع comma في نهاية كل سطر ونضع في نهاية العنوان Fullstop )

### 2- التاريخ

ويكتب في السطر التالي مباشرة للعنوان ويكتب اليوم بالرقم والنهية والشهر بالحروف كاملا ثم السنة بالارقام مثل (26<sup>th</sup> April,2013.)

### 3- اسم المرسل اليه +Dear:

وتكتب في السطر التالي مباشرة للتاريخ من اقصى اليسار ولها ثلاث حالات:-

- (أ) الي صديق: لا نكتب كلمة friend ولكن نكتب اسم الصديق مباشرة. مثل , Dear Ahmed .  
(ب) الي قريب: يجوز ان نكتب درجة القرابة مثل Dear my father, Mother, sister, aunt.....ect.  
(ج) الي مسؤول: نكتب, Dear Sir سواء كان رجل او امرأة أو نستخدم لقب المسؤول اذا كنا نعرفه.

### 4- المقدمة

## جمل افتتاحية تصلح للخطاب

( خاص بالطالب المتوسط أو دون المتوسط )

وهي تختلف باختلاف الغرض من كتابة الخطاب فمثلا:-

(أ) مقدمة الخطاب الرسمي :

- It gives me a great honour to write you this letter to tell you that -----  
- انه ليشرفني أن اكتب إليكم هذا الخطاب لأخبركم
- I am very pleased to write you this letter to tell you that -----  
- من دواعي سروري أن اكتب إليكم هذا الخطاب لأخبركم
- (ب) مقدمة الخطاب الودي ( مقدمة سارة):
  - I'm very glad to write this letter to you hoping that you and your family are in good health.
  - From the deepest bottom of my heart, I write you this letter to -----
  - I hope you and your family are fine. -I'd like to invite you to.....
  - I'm writing to thank you for (inviting me to.....)
  - It gives me the greatest pleasure to send you this letter.....
  - I have the pleasure to accept your kind invitation.
  - I'd like to congratulate you on your (success / marriage / birthday)
  - I am very thankful to you for (your nice present / your kind offer)
  - Would you please allow me to invite you to.....

- I`m very pleased to write you this letter. I hope that you are well when you receive this letter.

- I hope you are in a good health when you receive my letter, you can't imagine how pleased I was while I was writing this letter.

( ج ) مقدمة الخطاب الودي (مقدمة غير سارة في التعزية – والمرض – والفقدان – والحادثه.....الخ )

- I am so sorry to hear about your illness
- I was so sorry to hear that you (had an accident....)
- I am so sorry I won't be able to accept your invitation because...
  - I can't tell you how sad I feel when I heard that ..... { you made an accident  
you feel ill  
your father's death ,  
your flat was robbed  
your grandfather's death }
  - I can't tell you how sad I felt when I heard that your (.....) died last week. You know such is heaven's command.
  - It pleases me a lot to write you this letter.
  - It is always my joy either to write to you or get letters from you.
  - I was so happy when I received your letter. Thank you very much for that letter.
  - I was so sorry when I heard your bad news. I hope you overcome these circumstances.

## 5 الموضوع

هو اهم جزء في الخطاب وهو الذي من اجله نكتب الخطاب وغالبا ماياتي موضوع الخطاب (الغرض من الرسالة) في رأس السؤال كالاتي  
- Write a letter to your father thanking him ,Telling him ,تخبره , informing him ,تخبره , advising him ,تطلب منه .....etc.  
- عند كتابة الموضوع يمكن أن نستخدم الجملة الآتية أولا:

- I write this letter in order to thank you, tell you , inform you , congratulate you ..... etc.

نماذج لبعض الموضوعات :

### 1- خطاب الدعوة : ( invitation )

- I would like to invite you to .... I'm sure you won't be sorry for coming because you will enjoy a happy time among us.

### 2- الرد على الدعوة بالموافقة

- I'm very grateful to you for your kind invitation. It is great honour to accept your invitation. I will arrive in time.

### 3- الرد على الدعوة بالرفض

- I'm very grateful to you for your kind invitation, I'm very sorry for not being able to accept your invitation because ( I'm busy , I have exams , .... ) please accept my apology.

### 4 - خطاب التهنية ( congratulating )

- I send this letter to congratulate you on ....

- I'm sure that is the result of your hard study. - I hope you enjoy your new life with your wife.

### 5 - خطابات الشكر ( thanking )

- I would like to express my deep thanking for your ..... and that is doubtless a thoughtful of you.

### 6 - خطابات التعزية :

- I would like to express my deep sorrow and sympathy but that's our destiny and we can't show any objection because such is heaven's command. I hope you are patient.

### 6- الخاتمة:

## جمل ختامية تصلح للخطاب ( خاص بالطالب المتوسط أو دون المتوسط )

لا بد وان تكتب في نهاية المضمون وفي منتصف السطر أو بعد ترك مسافة لاتقل عن 2 سم من ناحية اليسار وهي كثيرة مثل :

- I'm looking forward to hearing from you soon.

- Give my hands to all your family

- Give my love to all your family.

- Remember me to all at home.

- Please, write back soon.

- My best regards to all at home.

### 7- التوقيع

- يكتب في نهاية الموضوع في أقصى اليمين ويمكن استخدام التوقيعات الآتية على حسب الخطاب

ابنك المحب your loving son المخلص لك وللأصدقاء , yours sincerely , المخلص Yours

ثم نكتب اسم الراسل اسفل منه.

## نماذج الخطاب ( سؤال و اجابة )

1- Write a letter to your friend John who wants to come to visit Egypt. Tell him about: the weather, suitable clothes to bring, places to visit and any other information you think is important. Your name is Sami. You live at 69 Safyia Zaghloul st. Alezandria. (2005).

69 Safyia Zaghloul st,  
Alexandria,  
Egypt.  
15<sup>th</sup> June 2007.

Dear John,

It gives me the greatest pleasure to send you this letter to tell you that I'm happy that you want to visit my country Egypt , the weather here is fine , you can get any suitable clothes , we will enjoy our time here as Egypt , as you know , is full of historic places , we will visit the great pyramids , the sphinx and Cairo tower , I will take you to see my uncle's farm , it is very beautiful .

I wait for you.

Good bye

Yours'

Sami.

15 Ahmad Sarhan St.,  
Zagazig,  
Bahgat Company.

2- خطاب الإعلان عن وظيفة والرد عليه:  
55EL Bustan St.,  
Garden City,  
Cairo.  
8<sup>th</sup> , March 2012.

Dear Sir,

It gives me honour to write you this letter to tell you that I have read your advertisement and it gives me pleasure to tell you that I would like to work with you, I am ----- years old, I am single, I have the qualification required, and I have a good experience as I worked in this field advertised before.

Please write back to me.

Yours' faithfully

Ayman Rashad

جميع اسئلة الخطاب التي وردت في امتحانات الثانويه العامه منذ سنه 1980

1. Your American friend Tom sent you a letter asking about the best time for visiting Egypt. Write him an answer to his letter. Your name is Ihsan and you live at 9El-Kased Street , Mansoura (1980)

Use the following guiding words to write the body of the letter:

*Egypt – fine weather – all the year round – winter – warm – visit – monuments – Luxor – Aswan – summer – not too hot – enjoy – beach – Alexandria*

2. Write a letter to your friend John with whom you worked in England last summer as you have decided to work in Egypt instead. Your name is Galal and you live at 33 El-Nahda Street, Mansourah.

Use the following guiding words to write the body of the letter: (1981)

*enjoy – stay – England – prefer – in Egypt – reclaim – desert land – produce – more food – less money – serve – my country*

3. You have come to know that your friend Tom whom you met last summer in London, had an accident and broke one of his legs. Write a letter enquiring about his condition and wishing he would get well. Your name is Zaki and you live at 12 El-Barrad Street , Shoubra , Cairo. (1982)

Use the following guiding words:

*heard – accident – driving – motor cycle – broke – how serious – improving – well – soon*

4. Write a letter to your friend Ahmed who lives in Cairo inviting him to your sister's wedding. Your name is Ramzy and you live at 15 Mabrouk Street, Tanta. (1983)

5. You received an invitation from your English friend Tom asking you to spend ten days with him in England, but unfortunately you can't go. Write a letter thanking him for his invitation and telling him you won't be able to go. Your name is Sherif, and you live at 120 Ramses Street , Cairo. (1984)

6. Write a letter to your friend Herbert who lives in England and is in business with his father. Invite him to visit the Cairo International Exhibition and tell him what exhibits he will see. Your name is Ahmed. You live at 25, Nobar Street, Sayeda Zeinab, Cairo. (1985).

7. Write a letter to your brother who is studying in the U.S.A. asking him to study hard and telling him what his country expects him to do when he returns home. Your name is Ashraf and you live at 67, Ramses Street, Cairo. (1986)

Using all the guiding words is not a must :

*-double – efforts – achieve – success – return – country – await – take part – projects – production – repay – state loans*

7. Write a letter to your friend , John , in London , telling him that you have finished your studies in agriculture. The government is giving you a piece of reclaimed land. You are going to live and work there. Your name is Ali and you live at 70 Ramses Street , Cairo. (1987)

You don't have to use the following guiding words :

*-great plans – future – increase – Egypt's green land – food – animal production – vital – life – economy*

8- Write a letter in reply to the following one. Your name is Kareem and you live at 18 Omar Ibn El Khattab St. Nasr City, Cairo. (1994)

Dear Kareem,

I've just received a letter from Yasser in which he told me that you had to go into hospital last Friday. I was greatly disappointed to hear about it. Yasser also informed me that you had an accident while driving your car downtown and that you broke one of your legs.

I'd like to know from you, as soon as possible, how serious the injury is. It would be a great relief to me to hear of your speedy recovery. Please accept the bunch of flowers I'm sending.

With my best wishes to you and your family

Yours sincerely,

Ashraf

9. Adrian Doff is an English student who came to Egypt to visit Luxor and see Opera Aida. He stayed at the Sphinx Hotel, 12 Nile Street, Luxor. Adrian wrote a letter to his friend Martin telling him how much he enjoyed watching the performance as well as seeing the monuments at Luxor. Write Adrian's letter to Martin. (1995 1st Stage)

10. You visited the Sixth of October City last week. Write a letter to your friend, Hany, telling him about your visit and describing what you liked most: modern houses, wide streets, new factories and lovely parks. Your name is Mohsen and you live at 20 Nile Street, Cairo. (1996)

11. Write a letter to your friend, Samy, congratulating him on his success and asking him about his plans for spending the summer holidays. Your name is Hatem and you live at 20 Adly Street, Cairo. (1996 1st Stage)

12. Write a letter to your friend David with whom you spent a week in London. Thank him for his hospitality and kindness. Your name is Ahmed and you live at 50 Ramses Street, Cairo. (1997)

You may make use of the following points:

-thank - invitation - enjoy - meet - nice family - delicious food - places visited - shopping - presents - visit Egypt somebody

13. Write a letter to your British friend, Andy, telling him how life has greatly changed in Egypt, especially in the fields of industry, transport, and education. Your name is Abu Bakr El-Gaweesh and you live at 10 El-Mineisee Street, Ettel EL-kabeer, and Ismailiya.

14. Write a reply to the following letter from your Syrian friend, Jomana. Your name is Asmaa and you live at 18, Horreya Street, Heliopolis (2007 1st Stage).

Dear Asmaa,

How nice it is to remember the happy old days ! Six months have passed since we last met. I've got some good news for you. I joined the faculty of Fine Arts. My studies take up all my time but I'm looking forward to coming for the summer holidays. Tell me how things are going along. What faculty have you joined in Cairo? How are you going on with your studies? You promised to visit our country soon. If so, let me know.

Yours sincerely,

Jomana

15. Write a letter to your friend Jones who wants to come to visit Egypt. (2005 1st Stage)

Tell him about: the weather, suitable clothes to bring, places to visit, accommodation and any other information you think is important. Your name is Sami. You live at 69 Safya Zagloul Street, Alexandria

## 6 - Common Notes on Writing

### ملاحظات عامة علي الكتابة

- عندما تريد أن تقول : يوجد الكثير من.....  
نستخدم: There are a lot of في حالة الأسماء الجمع التي تعد و نستخدم There is a lot of في حالة الأسماء التي لا تعد و المفرد

- There are a lot of computers in our schools nowadays.
- There is a lot of evidence that smoking is harmful to health.

- هناك فرق بين

There (ظرف مكان)

Their (ضمير ملكية)

-The boys studied their lessons well.

- Can you see the tree over there?

لا نستخدم حرف جر مع Everywhere, anywhere, next week, last week

- Computers are used everywhere nowadays.

- I will travel to London next week.

عند ترجمة جملة فيها "يؤثر في" نقول إما affect + obj أو have an effect on

- Smoking has a bad effect on health. - Smoking affects health badly.

الكلمات الدالة على الجنسية تبدأ بحرف Capital

- The government provides health care for all Egyptians.

و لاحظ أن هو ضمير ملكية يأتي بعده الاسم: It's

- A lot of tourists visit Egypt to enjoy its beautiful weather.

و لاحظ أن It's هي اختصار it is / it has

- It's raining now. - It's written in English.  
- It's the most beautiful garden I have ever seen.

الكلمات الآتية يأتي بعدها فعل مفرد و لكن يشار إليها بضمير جمع :

someone/ somebody/ everyone/ everybody/ anyone / anybody / no one / nobody

- Everyone should do their best so that Egypt can keep up with advanced countries.  
- عند كتابة خطاب لاحظ أن الجمل الآتية هي الصحيحة :  
- I am writing this letter to thank ... - I am waiting for your reply.

- لاحظ أن الفعل teach بمعنى "يعلم" أو "يدرس" و يأتي منها كلمة teacher  
- لاحظ أن الفعل learn بمعنى "يتعلم" أو "يأتي منها كلمة learner (متعلم/ دارس)

- Schools teach us English.  
- We learn English at school.

- لاحظ أن فعل to be يستخدم في ثلاث حالات هي :  
(1) في تكوين زمن المضارع المستمر و الماضي المستمر

- They are building a new road.  
- She was listening to the news.

(2) في تكوين المبني للمجهول

- The city was destroyed by the earthquake.

(3) كفعل أساسي في الجملة

- The weather was beautiful yesterday.  
- لاحظ أن كلمة means تستخدم في المفرد و الجمع بنفس الهجاء و في حالة المفرد تسبقها الأداة a:

- Television is a means of communication.  
- Buses and trains are means of transport.

- الجملة التي تبدأ بفعل مضاف له ing يأتي معها الفعل مفرد:

- Learning foreign languages is useful.  
- Doing sports helps us to get fit.

- لاحظ ما يلي :

With the help of..... بمساعدة In this way..... بهذه الطريقة  
One of the advantages of ..... is that .....

## 7 - Common Mistakes in Writing

أخطاء شائعة في الكتابة

### علامات الترقيم punctuation

- أحيانا يبدأ الطالب الجملة بحرف small ويستخدم capital في غير مكانه وقد ينهي الجملة بفاصلة ويختم السؤال بنقطة و لا بد أن يعرف الطالب أن :

- (1) أول حرف في الجملة لا بد أن يكون capital فمثلا لا يصح أن نكتب he is ill. بل نكتبها : He is ill.
- (2) الضمير (I) يكون هكذا capital في أي مكان في الجملة.
- (3) أسماء الأيام والشهور والأشخاص والبلاد والوزارات واللغات والجنسيات والبحار والانهار والمحيطات والقنوات والخلجان والسدود والواحات و الجبال والكتب والصحف ولفظ الجلالة God وضمائره والألقاب كلها تبدأ بحرف capital.
- (4) ننهي الجملة بنقطة
- (5) ننهي السؤال بعلامة استفهام.
- (6) بعد Yes او No نضع فاصلة سفلية (,) وكذلك قبل الكلام المباشر وعند مخاطبة شخص وللفصل بين مجموعة من الكلمات في قائمة من نوع واحد.
- (7) وعلامة التعجب بعد التعجب ! What a good pen.
- (8) علامات التنصيص " " في الأسلوب المباشر.
- (9) الـ apostrophe للملكية: سيارة عمر Omar's car ولو الاسم منتهى ب s نضع ' فقط.

1- كتابه الجملة بدون فعل وهذا لا اعتقاد الطالب انه مادامت الجملة في العربي ليس فيها فعل (الجملة الاسمية طبعاً) فانه في الانجليزية نفس الوضع . و هذا الكلام غير صحيح لأن الجملة في الانجليزية يكون فيها فعل لذلك اذا لم تجد فعل في الجملة العربي التي تترجمها الى انجليزية استخدم من عندك احد التصريفات المناسبة لـ verb to be .  
مثال :

- مصر احسن بلد في العالم Egypt the best country in the world  
و هذا خطأ و الصحيح أن نقول Egypt is the best country in the world.

2- عدم استخدام a / an حينما يكون من الضروري استخدامهم :  
مثال :

I bought book. اشتريت كتابا

و هذا خطأ و الصحيح أن نقول I bought a book لانه اسم مفرد معدود نكرة فلا بد أن نضع قبله اداة نكرة a مع الاسم البادئ بحرف ساكن و an مع البادئ بحرف متحرك .

3- الاستخدام الخطأ لـ the فكثير من الطلاب يستخدمها قبل كلمات لا تأخذ the ولذلك ننصح الطالب بمراجعة استخدامات the ومتى لا تستخدم.

تذكر ان the لا تستخدم قبل الالعاب الرياضية football وليس the football ولا تستخدم قبل اسماء المواد الدراسية ولا المواد الخام ولا الاسماء المعنوية ولا اسماء الوجبات ولا اسماء اللغات ولا قبل كلمة home ولا قبل كلمة work بمعنى العمل ولا تستخدم قبل اسماء الاشخاص والبلاد الا المستثنى من هذه القاعدة ولا قبل الاسم الجمع الذي يشير الى شئ عام غير محدد اما ان اشار الى شئ محدد او مخصص يسبق ب the.

4- الاستخدام الخاطئ لترجمة الافعال التي تتبع بحرف جر في اللغة العربية بينما هذه الافعال لا تأخذ حرف جر في الانجليزية وذلك لاختلاف طبيعة كل لغة عن الاخرى واليك هذه الامثلة:

- يتمتع ب enjoy وليس enjoy with كما يكتبها كثير من الطلاب وهذا خطأ أكيد.  
- يحتفل ب celebrate / يخاطر ب risk / يتغلب على overcome / يجيب على answer / يقترب من approach / ينتهي من finish  
- يصل الى arrive at/ arrive in / reach / يسمح ل let / يؤثر على affect

5- من الخطأ استخدام to بعد الافعال الناقصة فلا نقول ..... will to / can to / could to .

6- استخدام verb to be قبل كل الافعال بدون تمييز:

مثال :

يكتب الطالب: The government is pays attention to developing education طبعاً هذا خطأ كبير ، فلا بد ان يعرف الطالب استخدامات verb to be كفعل اساسي في الجملة (لا يوجد معه فعل آخر) بمعنى (يكون) و أحيانا بمعنى (يوجد) وفي هذه الحالة يأتي بعد صفة He is ill. او اسم He is a doctor. او ظرف مكان I am here... الخ ، ويستخدم ايضا كفعل مساعد في تكوين الأزمنة المستمرة I am writing a letter now. وفي المبنى للمجهول Football is played by me every day.

7- ومن الاخطاء ان بعض الطلاب يستهل الجملة بالاسم وبعده الضمير:

مثال :

يكتب الطالب: Ahmed he is nice. طبعاً هذا خطأ فاما أن يقول Ahmed is nice. او He is nice.

8- من الأخطاء الشهيرة نسيان اضافة ال s مع الضمائر he/ she/ it ومايساويها من الاسماء عند استخدام زمن المضارع البسيط الذي يعبر عن الحقائق والعادات فمثلاً تجد الطالب يكتب : He play football every day. وهذا خطأ فالمفروض أن يكتب : plays

9- من الاخطاء الواضحة الترجمة الخاطئة للمضاف والمضاف اليه ( اسم نكرة + اسم معرفة) مثل (تلوث البيئة) تجد الطالب يكتبها: Pollution environment وطبعاً وهذا خطأ والصحيح انك عندما تترجم (اسم نكرة+معرفة) تضع the قبل النكرة و of بعده فتصبح : the pollution of the environment أو: environment pollution

10- وكذلك من الاخطاء الترجمة الحرفية لحروف الجر المصاحبة لبعض الكلمات لظن الطالب ان اللغة العربية لا تختلف عن الانجليزية في اى شئ وهذا طبعاً خطأ واليك بعض الامثلة: يساهم في contribute to وليس contribute in / جيد في good at وليس good in لاحظ الترجمة الصحيحة لما يلي : خطر على : dangerous to / يفكر في think of/ about / يحلم ب dream of/ about / يشجع...على ..to encourage يمكن ..من enable ...to / يثنيه... عن discourage ... وهكذا

11- وكذلك من الاخطاء المعروفة الناتجة عن الاختلاف بين اللغة الانجليزية واللغة العربية ان هناك كلمات باللغة العربية جمع بينما في الانجليزية مفرد غير معدود وتأخذ فعل مفرد وليس جمع مثل اللغة العربية فتجد طالب يقول : The news are good today. وهذا خطأ فالمفروض أن يكتب The news is good today.



## Introduction

لا يمكن ترجمة الكلمة دون قراءة الجملة ، ولا يمكن ترجمة الجملة دون التعرف علي السياق العام ، فالترجمة ليست مجرد نقل كلمة أو لفظ وإنما هي نقل مفاهيم الكلام بكل ما تحويه من معاني.

مثال :

كلمة (Home) يصعب ترجمتها خارج السياق ، فإذا وردت في سياق هذه الجملة تكون الترجمة دون شك "أنه في المنزل"

- He is at home.

لكن عند ذكر كلمة (Home) في جملة مثل:-

- Home means a lot to me.

تصبح هذه الكلمة صعبة الترجمة في الجملة ذاتها ولا بد من قراءة النص بأكمله وإليك هذه الاحتمالات :

1- شخص في الخارج يتحدث إلي زميله قائلًا الجملة السابقة فتكون كلمة (Home) هنا الوطن.

2- موظفة تغادر بيتها في الصباح وتعود في المساء . فكلمة (Home) تعني لها الحياة الأسرية.

3- أحد العاملين في الصحراء مثلًا تفوه بكلمة (Home) فهي تعني له الراحة والدفع .

إذا تعتمد الترجمة علي المعاني في السياق.

يظن البعض ان صعوبة الترجمة تكمن في صعوبة الكلمات المعطاة ، ولكن الفهم السليم للبناء اللغوي للجملة المعطاة هو البداية الصحيحة للترجمة.

## How to be a good translator?

1 - في كل الجمل عند الترجمة من العربية إلى الإنجليزية فإن الجملة الإنجليزية تبدأ بالفاعل مثل:-

-All animals and birds adapt to the environment in which they live تتكيف كل الحيوانات والطيور مع البيئة التي تعيش فيها .

-The government distributes the newly reclaimed land. توزع الحكومة الأراضي المستصلحة الجديدة.

- The World civilisation owes a great deal to the Arabs.. تدين حضارة العالم بالكثير إلى العرب..

- Egypt made great achievements during the last twenty years. حققت مصر انجازات عظيمة خلال العشرون سنة الاخيرة.

2- حدد زمن الجملة: هل هو مضارع أم ماضي أم مستقبل أم مزيج من الأزمنة :

"لقد نجحت مصر في جمع شمل القادة العرب وسيكون لهذا أثرا طيبا علي عملية السلام"

لاحظ : الجملة هنا تحتوي علي أكثر من زمن. الجزء الأول من الجملة يحتوي علي زمن مضارع والأخر مستقبل. لنري كيف تكون الترجمة ؟

- Egypt has succeeded in closing the ranks of the Arab leaders and this will have a great effect on the peace process.

3- تجنب دائما الترجمة الحرفية التي تؤدي إلي تحطيم الشكل السليم للجملة. فمثلا :

"مازلنا نعاني من مشكلة البطالة"

-Still suffer from problem of unemployment. (X)

وهذه ترجمة طالب لم يطبق قواعد اللغة وبالتالي فالجملة خطأ تماما والصحيح هو :

- We are still suffering from the problem of unemployment.

4- يجب أن تتعامل بشكل صحيح مع (Verb to be):

لأن تركيب الجملة في اللغة العربية قد يؤدي إلي نسيانه ، نقول "الطالب ماهر" اين فعل الجملة ؟

في الواقع هي جملة سليمة ولا تحتاج فعل في اللغة العربية لكن في الانجليزية لابد من الفعل.

فنقول :

-The student is clever.

- The desert of Egypt is rich in its natural resource. إن صحراء مصر غنية بثراوتها الطبيعية.

كذلك قد يحل (Verb to be) محل الضمانر ( هو / هي / هما / هم / هن .....الخ)

- العمل الجاد هو السبيل الوحيد للنجاح

- Hard work is the only way to succeed.

5- ايضا يجب أن تتعامل بشكل صحيح مع (verb to have):

فمثلا "لدينا الكثير من الموارد الطبيعي" هنا اين الفاعل والفعل (نحن نمتلك) وتكون الترجمة:

- We have a lot of natural resources.

- و هناك معاني مختلفة لـ (verb to have) حسب السياق:

- Moaz had two eggs for breakfast.. تناول معاذ بيضتين في الإفطار..

- I had a bad headache yesterday.. اصابني صداع شديد بالأمس..

6. لا يوجد مفعول مطلق في الإنجليزية (نستخدم الفعل يليه الحال)، أي أن المفعول المطلق يترجم في اللغة الإنجليزية إلي ظرف أو عبارة ظرفية

- تتأثر السياحة تأثرا كبيرا بالأحداث الجارية في العالم. Tourism is greatly affected by the current events in the world.

- يؤثر التدخين تأثيراً سلبياً على الصحة. Smoking affects health negatively.

- Industry developed greatly. تطورت الصناعة تطوراً كبيراً

- My teacher treats me well. يعاملني معلمي معاملةً حسنةً

- The state is (greatly) seriously interested in Education. تهتم الدولة بالتعليم اهتماما كبيرا

- The situation grew seriously bad. ازداد الموقف سوءا بشكل خطير.

7- غالباً الصفة تأتي قبل الأسم والظرف بعد الفعل :

- He is foolish boy. انه ولد أحمق  
- He behaves foolishly. انه يتصرف بحماقة

8- يجب مراعاة زمن الجملة و صيغتها (معلوم أو مجهول)

- 'Tourism is considered an important source of national income. (تعتبر فعل مضارع مبني للمجهول)  
- يعتمد التقدم اعتماداً أساسياً على الكمبيوتر. (يعتمد فعل مضارع مبني للمعلوم)  
- Progress depends mainly on the computer.

إذا كان فعل جملة الإنجليزية في المجهول:

أ - يفضل ترجمته للعربية في المعلوم مثل:

- The operation was performed by a well-known surgeon.  
قام جراح مشهور بإجراء العملية الجراحية. / لقد أجري العملية جراح مشهور. / أجريت العملية الجراحية عن طريق جراح مشهور.  
ب- من الممكن استخدام الفعل ( تم ) يليه الاسم من الفعل الأصلي مثل:

-The task was carried out in time. تم تنفيذ المهمة في الوقت المحدد

9- تستخدم "of" في جميع الحالات و خاصة عندما يكون المضاف اليه غير عاقل مثل :

- The ministry of Education وزارة التعليم  
- The problem of unemployment مشكلة البطالة

10- تستخدم "S" الملكية غالباً عندما يكون المضاف اليه عاقل مثل :

- My mother's house. ملكية مفرد (s منزل والدتي)  
- My parents' house. ملكية جمع (s منزل والدي)

11 - كلمات التوكيد مثل ( إن / أن / في / فإن ..... ) ليس لها مرادف في الإنجليزية ولذلك تحذف وليس لها تأثير على المعنى .

- Peace is the dream of all nations. إن السلام حلم كل الشعوب

12- أحفظ ما يمكنك من الأفعال وحروف الجر الخاصة بها :

فمثلاً : ترجمة هذه الجملة " مدرسي مسرور من عملي"

- My teacher is pleased with my work. (من الخطأ أن نقول Pleased from)

- The child is afraid of the lion. (من الخطأ القول afraid from)

13- حفظ الأفعال التي لا تحتاج إلي حروف جر:

- نحن نحتفل بعيد الطفولة.

- We celebrate the Child day. / - We enjoyed the party. استمتعنا بالحفلة.

- هناك أفعال لا تحتاج بعدها حرف جر مثل :

|        |          |           |          |         |           |           |              |
|--------|----------|-----------|----------|---------|-----------|-----------|--------------|
| Admire | يعجب بـ  | Celebrate | يحتفل بـ | Include | يشتمل علي | Pass      | ينجح / يجتاز |
| Affect | يؤثر علي | Enjoy     | يتمتع بـ | Join    | يلتحق بـ  | Reach     | يصل إلي      |
| Arrest | يقبض علي | Fear      | يخشى أن  | Obtain  | يحصل علي  | Recognize | يتعرف علي    |
| Avoid  | يتجنب    | Feel      | يشعر بـ  | Owe     | يدين بـ   | Sacrifice | يضحى         |

14- أحفظ تصريفات الأفعال الشائعة حتى تتمكن من كتابة الجملة في زمنها الصحيح :

- لقد أصبح تطوير التعليم من أهم الاهداف التي تسعى الحكومة لتحقيقها.

- Developing education has become one of the most important aims the government tries to achieve.

15- من + صفة + لـ أو علي + مفعول + ان :

- It is + adj. + for + ضمير مفعول + to + inf.....

من الأفضل لنا أن نتعلم اللغات الأجنبية لأنها وسيلة للاتصال بين الناس

- It is better for us to learn foreign languages because they are means of communication among people.

16- الضمانر المستترة في العربية pronouns يجب إظهارها عند الترجمة إلى الإنجليزية:

- They visited me yesterday. زاروني أمس.

- We're proud that education is the first national project in Egypt نفخر بأن التعليم هو المشروع الأول في مصر

17- لام التعليل تترجم إلى : المصدر + to / so as to / In order to ...

سهر طوال الليل لينتهي جميع أعماله

- He stayed up all night so as to finish all his work.

18- الضمير المضاف إلي فعل يترجم إلي (ضمير مفعول me- her -you - him - them - us):

إن تعلم اللغات الأجنبية يمكننا من قراءة الصحف العالمية.

- Learning foreign languages enables us to read international newspapers.

19- الضمير المضاف إلي اسم يترجم إلي (صفة ملكية my-her-their-our-its-your):

يزور مصر كثير من السياح كل عام لمشاهدة أثارها القديمة

- Every year, a lot of tourists visit Egypt to watch its ancient monuments.

20- الأسماء المعنوية لا تأخذ the عند ترجمتها إلى الإنجليزية عندما نقصد معنى عام:

|            |        |         |         |          |        |        |         |
|------------|--------|---------|---------|----------|--------|--------|---------|
| Beauty     | الجمال | Honesty | الأمانة | Peace    | السلام | truth  | الصدق   |
| Friendship | الصدقة | Honour  | الشرف   | progress | التقدم | Virtue | الفضيلة |

يرجع التقدم في الزراعة والصناعة والطب إلى العلم الحديث.

Progress in agriculture, industry and medicine is due to modern science.

The progress عنها نتكلم عن التقدم والصناعة والزراعة بصفة عامة فلا يصح أن نقول

The progress in Egypt ولكن إذا خصصنا وقتنا التقدم في مصر .....

21- الصفة المسبوقه بـ ( the ) ولا يتبعها أسم تترجم إلى اسم جمع في اللغة العربية:

the dumb البكم - the poor الفقراء - the rich الأغنياء

22- الأسماء التي لا تجمع Uncountable Nouns لا تأخذ أداة المعرفة the عندما نقصد معنى عام:

|             |          |             |         |         |         |      |       |
|-------------|----------|-------------|---------|---------|---------|------|-------|
| baggage     | الحقائب  | Grass       | العشب   | luggage | الأمثعة | news | أخبار |
| electricity | الكهرباء | information | معلومات | money   | المال   | oil  | الزيت |

23- كلمات التوكيد في اللغة العربية ليست لها ترجمة:

إن الصناعة هي أساس التنمية

- Industry is the basis of development.

24- حرف الـ ( س ) وكلمة ( سوف ) المرادف لهما في اللغة الإنجليزية هو زمن المستقبل البسيط:

- The government will build a lot of schools.

ستبنى الحكومة مدارس كثيرة

25- لقد + فعل ماضى وفي الجملة إشارة تدل على الماضى البسيط تترجم إلى ماضى بسيط:

- He telephoned me yesterday.

لقد اتصل بي أمس هاتفياً

26- لقد + فعل ماضى بدون أى إشارة تدل على الماضى تترجم لمضارع تام:

لقد اهتمت الدولة بالتعليم

-The state has taken great interest in education.

لقد ساعد العلم الإنسان على أن يحيا حياة مريحة

-Science has helped man to lead a comfortable life.

لقد أصبح من الواضح إن الإدمان هو وباء العصر

- It has become clear that addiction is the plague of the age.

لقد شهدت مصر قفزة حضارية كبيرة في جميع المجالات

- Egypt has witnessed a great cultural leap in all fields.

27- قد + فعل مضارع فإن ذلك يدل على الاحتمال ونستخدم :may

قد يشهد هذا العام تطورات هائلة نحو السلام

-This year may witness immense development towards peace.

28- لن +فعل مضارع يقابله في الإنجليزية مستقبل بسيط منفي future simple:

- I won't do that again.

لن أفعل ذلك مرة أخرى

29- لم + فعل مضارع يقابله في الإنجليزية ماضى بسيط Past simple:

- Ahmed did not attend my birthday party.

لم يحضر أحمد حفل عيد ميلادى

30- كان + فعل مضارع يقابله في الإنجليزية ماضى مستمر :

كان والدى يقرأ الصحيفة عندما دق جرس الباب

- Dad was reading the paper when the doorbell rang .

31- كان + فعل مضارع يقابله في الإنجليزية الماضى البسيط إذا دل على عادة في الماضى:

كان القدماء المصريون يبنون أهرامهم من الحجارة

-The Ancient Egyptians built their pyramids of stones.

الفعل المضارع في اللغة العربية قد يقابله في الإنجليزية الفعل + ing :

- I saw him playing

رأيتة يلعب

32- كان + قد + فعل ماضى يقابله في الإنجليزية الماضى التام :

عندما وصلت إلى السينما كان الفيلم قد بدأ.

- When I arrived at the cinema the film had started.

33. نضع of بين المضاف و المضاف إليه أو نبدأ بالمضاف إليه ثم نضع المضاف و لا نستخدم of :-

|                          |                       |               |
|--------------------------|-----------------------|---------------|
| standard of living       | living standard       | مستوى المعيشة |
| Pollution of the air     | air pollution         | تلوث الهواء   |
| the rate of birth        | Birth rate            | معدل المواليد |
| Pollution of environment | environment pollution | تلوث البيئة   |

34- يراعى زمن الجملة وصيغتها (مبنى للمجهول أم مبنى للمعلوم)

Tourism is considered an important source

تعتبر السياحة مصدراً هاماً

We consider tourism an important source

نحن نعتبر السياحة مصدراً هاماً

35- يجب ان نختير الالفاظ الانجليزية الصحيحة :

- I held my bag when I left home.

أمسكت بحقيبتي حين غادرت المنزل

- I caught the thief before he escaped.

أمسكت باللس قبل ان يهرب

36- "لد + اسم" تترجم إلى have\ has + الاسم.

-The town has wide streets. للمدينة شوارع واسعة

37 - عند بداية الجملة بفعل به ing لا توضع قبله أداة .

- Reading is the mind food. القراءة غذاء العقل.

38 - الظرف / الحال adverb.

- He behaves carelessly. (يصف الفعل)

- She is extremely beautiful. (يصف الصفة)

- He runs very quickly. (يصف حال آخر)

39 - ترجمة كلمة "كل" إلى الإنجليزية:

- Every (Each) father is responsible for his family. كل أب مسئول عن أسرته .

- All teachers are responsible for the educational process. كل المعلمين مسئولون عن العملية التعليمية .

40 - إذا جاءت كلمة (the more / The + adj.+er) يليها جملة تترجم إلى: كلما

- The more you read, the better you become. كلما قرأت كلما أصبحت أفضل .

41- الاسم المعرفة في اللغة العربية قد يترجم اسم نكرة في اللغة الإنجليزية

- يجب ان يلتحق الطالب بالكلية التي تناسب مواهبه وقدراته

A student should join the faculty that suits his talents and abilities.

42 - كلمة "علينا" تترجم إلى : We should + inf.

- We should save energy. علينا أن نوفر الطاقة.

## Translation of Meaning

عند الترجمة من عربي إلى انجليزي

ترجم أولا من عربي إلى عربي لكي تفهم معني الجملة وإذا وقفت امامك كلمة صعبة عليك أن تبحث في ذهنك عن كلمة عربية قريبة منها وتؤدي نفس المعني تقريبا فمثلا :

أفضل المنتجات الوطنية لانها صناعة مصرية

افترض انك لا تعرف كلمة المنتجات (Products) يمكنك أن تبحث عن بديل قريب للمعني مثل البضائع ( goods ) أو السلع ( articles ) هكذا ... وافترض انك لا تعرف ايضا كلمة الوطنية ( national ) فيمكنك استخدام كلمة local وتعني المحلية والمعني واحد تقريبا ( المنتجات الوطنية ) ( البضائع المحلية) المهم أن تتصرف

"أنه من الصعب أن يعيش الانسان بلا عمل"

افترض انك لا تعرف عبارة "انه من الصعب" "It is difficult" فيمكنك أن تقول " It is not easy " والمعني واحد

"غزو الصحراء وتحويلها الى اراضي صالحة للزراعة ضروريا لزيادة الانتاج"

عبارة اراضي صالحة للزراعة = cultivable land يمكنك ان تستخدم اخر مثل green land ..... وهكذا

لاحظ انه في اللغة الانجليزية نفضل ان يكون ظرف الزمان والمكان اما في بداية الجملة او نهايتها واليك المثال التالي :

"يقام مهرجان للفنون الشعبية في الاسماعلية كل عام وتشارك فيه فرق من معظم دول العالم"

- Every year in Ismailia a folk festival is held and most of world countries take part in it.

- A folk festival is held every year in Ismailia and most of world countries take part in it.

عند الترجمة من اللغة الانجليزية الى العربية :

1 - اقرأ القطعة بعناية لتعرف الموضوع الذي تدور حوله القطعة .

3 - حاول تخمين معني الكلمات الصعبة عن طريق:

(أ)- أخذ الجملة ككل .

(ب)- مقارنة الكلمة الصعبة بكلمات أخرى قريبة منها تعرفها.

خذ المثال التالي :

- We should insist on buying commodities "made in Egypt "even if we have to pay a little more.

في مثل هذه الجملة قد تستعصي علينا ترجمة كلمة (commodities) اذا توقفنا عندها اما اذا قرانا الجملة ككل فسوف تخمن معناها (حاجيات -سلع- بضائع-الخ فتكون ترجمة الجملة كما يلي :

"يجب ان تتمسك بشراء السلع (المصنوعة في مصر)حتي ولودفعنا فيها ثمنا اكثر قليلا"

خذ المثال التالي :

- In the 10th of Ramadan city there are 135 plants now in operation and nearly 20.000 flats.

لو تسرعنا وترجمنا الكلمات منفصلة عن سياق الكلام فسوف تكون ترجمتنا في النهاية هكذا شنيا من العيب والهواء :-

(في مدينة العاشر من رمضان يوجد 135 نبات "X" في العملية الجراحية "X" حوالي 20000 مسطح "X")

اما اذا معنا التفكير فيما تقرأ فسوف تقدم الترجمة الصحيحة التالية :-

(في مدينة العاشر من رمضان يوجد 135 مصنع "وحدة صناعية" تعمل حاليا حوالي 20000 شقة سكنية)

4- ضع في اعتبارك أن الجملة في اللغة الانجليزية تبدأ بفاعل أما في اللغة العربية فغالبا ما تبدأ بفعل (وممكن أن تبدأ باسم ويجوز وضع إن قبل الاسم).

5- الجملة الانجليزية منفصلة عن بعضها بنقطة . وعند الترجمة إلى اللغة العربية اربط هذه الجمل بأدوات العطف (واو . ثم . فاء ) أو بعبارات مثل: ومن ثم , مع أن - بيد أن - ومع ذلك .

Success in life depends on patience and hard work. A pupil who starts learning his lesson from the beginning of the year will find no difficulty in passing his examination.

يعتمد النجاح في الحياة على الصبر والعمل الجاد ولذلك فان التلميذ الذي يبدأ في تعلم دروسه من بداية العام لن يجد صعوبة في اجتيازه الامتحان.

6- اقرأ الترجمة العربية لتتأكد من أنها مكتوبة بأسلوب عربي سليم مع تجنب الترجمة الحرفية والأخطاء النحوية وقد تحتاج إلى إضافة كلمة من عندك تذكر أن الترجمة هي فن نقل المعنى .

## Verb to (be)

قد يجد الطالب أو المترجم المبتدئ – في بعض الأحيان صعوبة في ترجمة verb to be إلى العربية. وتأتي تلك الصعوبة غالباً في اصراره على اظهاره في الجملة العربية ، واستخدام فعل الكيونة للتعبير عنه او لاختفائه في فهم معناه في السياق وللتغلب على تلك المشكلة توجد لدينا عدة طرق مختلفة يمكن اتباع احدها للترجمة ، وهي كما يلي :

1- اسقاط الفعل من الجملة العربية ، مثال :

- The manger is absent today.

المدير غائب اليوم

2- ترجمة الفعل بضمير شخصي في اللغة العربية مثال :

- Egypt is the heart of the Arab Nation. مصر هي قلب الامة العربية

3- ترجمة الـ verb to be بفعل اخر في العربية غير فعل الكيونة طبقاً لما يميله السياق وهذه اكثر الطرق اتباعاً وايسرها في نقل المعنى كاملاً وبشكل واضح واليك الامثلة التالية :

1- Democracy is a corner stone in our world today.

تشكل الديمقراطية حجر الزاوية في عالمنا اليوم.

2- The era of despotism is warning away.

أن عهد الاستبداد أخذ في الزوال .

3- The wedding was last week.

تم عقد القران الاسبوع الماضي

4- Rolex is a gold watch.

ساعة رولكس مصنوعة من الذهب

5- A knife is for cutting

تستخدم السكين للقطع

## Numbers

يجب مراعاة ان الاعداد من 1 الي 9 تكتب هجائياً دائماً ، أما زاد عن ذلك فيكتب ارقاما:

- Nine people were killed and 112 were injured.

مع ملاحظة انه عندما تبدأ الحملة الانجليزية بذكر العدد فاته يكتب هجائياً دائماً ايا كانت قيمته

- Seventy-six people were arrested.

- Ten thousands were laid off.

## Only

تستخدم لفظة (only) في الانجليزية لتقصر ما بعدها ، اي أنها تقوم بنفس عمل اداة القصر أو الاستثناء في اللغة العربية. وجزت العادة الخاطئة أن تترجم كلمة only بكلمة فقط بغض النظر عن المعنى الذي يمليه السياق ولنستعرض سوياً بعض الاساليب المقترحة لترجمة only بالمعنى الصحيح حسبما يقتضي السياق مع الحفاظ على قوة الدلالة التي تحملها only في الجملة ... واليك المثال التالي :

Only five members attended the meeting

لم يحضر الاجتماع سوى خمسة اعضاء . / لم يحضر الاجتماع الاربعة اعضاء . / حضر الاجتماع خمسة اعضاء فحسب .

من سمات اللغة الانجليزية عدم تمتعها بالمرونة في ترتيب الكلمات ، فالكلمة خارج موقعها الصحيح تؤدي إلى تغيير المعنى أو علي الأقل إلى التباسه وغموضه ، وهذه الخاصية تتجلى بوضوح شديد مع لفظة only واليك الامثلة التالية :

- Only Ahmed saw Mustafa this morning.

لم يري مصطفى هذا الصباح الا أحمد.

- Ahmed only saw Mustafa this morning.

لم يرق أحمد الابروية مصطفى هذا الصباح

- Ahmed saw only Mustafa this morning.

لم يرق أحمد الا مصطفى هذا الصباح

- Ahmed saw Mustafa only this morning.

لم يرق أحمد مصطفى الا هذا الصباح

## Words

الكلمة الواحدة قد يكون لها أكثر من معني وعليه يجب اختيار المعنى المناسب للكلمة حسب موقعها لان الكلمة الواحدة معناها حسب السياق فمثلاً :

|            |                  |              |            |
|------------|------------------|--------------|------------|
| Pure man   | رجل نقي السريرة  | Pure sky     | سماء صافية |
| Pure water | مياه صالحة للشرب | pure weather | هواء عليل  |
| Pure wool  | صوف خالص         |              |            |

## Word Order

الترتيب السليم للكلمات في الجملة :-

لابد من ترتيب الكلمات في وضع سليم في الجملة والا اختلف المعنى تماماً كما في هذا المثال :

- Withdrawal from occupied Arab territories..... الانسحاب من الاراضي العربية المحتلة

- Withdrawal from territories Arab occupied..... الانسحاب من الاراضي التي يحتلها العرب

الترجمة هي في الاساس نقل المعنى وليس مجرد نقل لفظ

- He is green with jealousy.

إذا ترجمت انه اخضر بالغيرة فتكون ترجمة قاصرة لانه لا يمكن وصف الغيرة باللون الاخضر ولكن الترجمة الصحيحة هي :

تأكل الغيرة قلبه. أو تأكله نار الغيرة.

-He returned empty-handed "عاد بخفي حنين"

## Adjectives

الصفة في اللغة الإنجليزية لها موقعان:

1 - توضع عادة قبل الاسم سواء كان فاعلاً أو مفعولاً.

- An honest man found this case in the street and delivered it to the police station.

- I met a fat man in the street.

- إذا كان الاسم الموصوف مفرد نضع a-an قبل الصفة حسب الحرف الأول في الصفة و ليس الاسم:

|                   |             |                         |            |
|-------------------|-------------|-------------------------|------------|
| a hard worker     | عامل مجد    | an old man              | رجل عجوز   |
| a serious problem | مشكلة خطيرة | an interesting anecdote | حكاية شيقة |

- وإذا كان الاسم الموصوف جمع يعد لا نضع a-an قبل الصفة و نضيف s في نهاية الاسم:

|              |             |         |            |
|--------------|-------------|---------|------------|
| hard workers | عمال مجدودن | old men | رجال مسنون |
|--------------|-------------|---------|------------|

- وإذا كان الاسم الموصوف لا يعد لا نضع a-an قبل الصفة و لا نضيف s في نهاية الاسم:

|                    |               |               |           |
|--------------------|---------------|---------------|-----------|
| useful information | معلومات مفيدة | new furniture | أثاث جديد |
|--------------------|---------------|---------------|-----------|

2 - تأتي الصفة بعد أفعال من أهمها "be" وأفعال أخرى مثل get = become / seem = look / feel / taste / smell / sound

- He gets tired easily.

- This flower smells good.

- يمكن أن تسبق الصفة بأداة المعرفة the لتحل محل اسم جمع يشير إلى طائفة معينة من الناس مثل :

- The strong الأقوياء - the poor الفقراء

The rich should help the poor.

- يجب على الأغنياء أن يساعدوا الفقراء

تتسم اللغة الانجليزية - بعكس اللغة العربية - بالأقتضاب وعدم الميل إلي التكرار (الا اذا كان متعمدا) ، لاحظ :

- Heavy clouds and rains.

والا لجاءت العبارة السابقة كما يلي :

- Heavy clouds and Heavy rains.

فالصفة هنا تصف كل من الاسمين الواقعين بعدها وعند التعامل مع مثل هذا البناء لنقله إلي العربية يجب علي المترجم أن يدرك أن عليه ترجمة الصفة مرتين (مرة واحدة مع كل اسم منهما) حيث تتسم العربية بالاسهاب مع مراعاة اللجوء إلي الترادف اعتمادا علي قاعدة الترابط ، فإذا جاءت الترجمة "سحب وامطار كثيفة / سحب وامطار غزيرة" تصبح ترجمة خاطئة ولكن الترجمة السليمة هي : سحب كثيفة وامطار غزيرة لان السحب توصف بالكثافة في حين توصف الامطار بالغزارة.

واليك مثال آخر :

- International peace and security

السلم الدولي والامن ( ترجمة قاصرة )

والترجمة الصحيحة تكون : السلم والامن الدوليان

ماذا يفعل المترجم لو قابلته صفة متعددة المقاطع بهذا الشكل

- This decision is unchangeable.

ويكون المترجم ملما بمعني أصل الكلمة (مع ملاحظة أن الأصل في هذه الحالة) يكون فعلا دائما

ونقترح عليه اتباع الخطوات التالية :

3- نترجم اللاحقة : يمكن أو قابل.

2- نأتي بالاسم من صيغة الفعل : تغيير.

1- نترجم البادئة : لا أو غير

4- نعيد ترتيب المقاطع الثلاث : لا يمكن تغيير ، غير قابل للتغيير

وعلي ذلك تكون الترجمة

هذا القرار لا يمكن تغييره. / هذا القرار يتعذر تغييره. / هذا القرار غير قابل للتغيير.

## Elections

|                         |                  |                               |                          |
|-------------------------|------------------|-------------------------------|--------------------------|
| a vice-president        | نائب الرئيس      | opponents                     | المعارضون                |
| await                   | يترقب بـ         | peaceful nuclear program      | برنامج نووي سلمي         |
| be + deprived of        | تكون محرومة من   | representation for women      | بتمثيل المرأة            |
| contestations           | طعون             | support                       | يؤيد \ يدعم              |
| elections was marked    | تميزت الانتخابات | the appointment of            | تعيين                    |
| fair (honest) elections | انتخابات نزيهة   | the independents              | المستقلين                |
| forging the elections   | تزوير الانتخابات | the National Democratic Party | الحزب الوطني الديموقراطي |
| have / has the right to | له الحق أن       | vote                          | يدلي بصوته               |
| invalid elections       | انتخابات باطلة   | witnessed (experienced)fraud  | شهدت تزوير               |

## The Nile Crisis

|                                 |                     |                               |                     |
|---------------------------------|---------------------|-------------------------------|---------------------|
| a matter of life or death       | مسألة حياة أو موت   | emergency meeting             | اجتماع طارئ         |
| constructive political dialogue | حوار سياسي البناء   | improve our relationship with | أن تحسن علاقاتها مع |
| deal with this seriously        | نتعامل مع هذا بجدية | lifblood = artery of life     | شريان الحياة        |

|                             |                     |                      |                |
|-----------------------------|---------------------|----------------------|----------------|
| downstream countries        | دول المصب           | Nile Basin countries | دول حوض النيل  |
| Egypt's quota of Nile water | حصة مصر لمياه النيل | the main source of   | المصدر الرئيسي |

## Spy

|                          |                     |                                |                       |
|--------------------------|---------------------|--------------------------------|-----------------------|
| a network of spy         | شبكة تجسس           | formal request                 | طلب رسمي              |
| betray his home          | يخون الوطن          | Leaked some secrets to Israel. | سرب بعض الأسرار       |
| Egyptian intelligence    | المخابرات المصرية   | managed to arrest              | تمكنت القاء القبض على |
| Egyptian security forces | أجهزة الامن المصرية | sentenced to death             | الحكم بالأعدام        |
| Egyptian spy             | الجاسوس المصرى      | to be an example               | ليكون عبرة            |

## Politics

|                               |                      |                                      |                          |
|-------------------------------|----------------------|--------------------------------------|--------------------------|
| Anarchy                       | فوضى سياسية          | media blackout                       | التعتيم الإعلامي         |
| Achieve welfare               | يحقق الرفاهية        | Members of the People's Assembly     | اعضاء مجلس الشعب         |
| Apartheid                     | تفرقة عنصرية         | Mercenaries                          | مرتزقة                   |
| Armed forces                  | القوات المسلحة       | Military sanctions                   | عقوبات عسكرية            |
| Authority transition          | انتقال السلطة        | Morale                               | الروح المعنوية           |
| Ballot papers                 | الانتخابات بطاقات    | Mufti of the Republic                | مفتى الجمهورية           |
| Battle of the Camel           | معركة الجمل          | National identification (ID )        | الرقم القومى             |
| Bigotry                       | التعصب الأعمى        | Negoice                              | إبادة جماعية             |
| Bloody conflict               | صراع دموي            | open up new vistas of                | يفتح آفاقاً جديدة        |
| Campaigns of atonement        | حملات التكفير        | Outcries                             | صيحات                    |
| caretaker                     | تسيير الاعمال        | Peaceful march                       | مسيرة سلمية              |
| caretaker government          | حكومة تسيير اعمال    | Phosphoric ink                       | الحبر الفسفورى           |
| Chaos                         | فوضى                 | Physical attacks                     | اعتداءات بدنية           |
| Chief of general staff        | رئيس الأركان         | Political detention                  | اعتقال سياسي             |
| citizens                      | رعايا                | Political parties                    | أحزاب سياسية             |
| Civil war                     | حرب أهلية            | Presidential elections               | انتخابات رئاسة الجمهورية |
| Coalition parties             | أحزاب ائتلافية       | Prime minister                       | رئيس الوزراء             |
| committee                     | لجنة                 | Prison dwellers                      | نزلاء السجن              |
| Complaints                    | شكاوى                | Purge the state of corruption        | تطهير الدولة من الفساد   |
| Condemn                       | يشجب/ يدين           | Recovery of state funds              | استرداد أموال الدولة     |
| Constitution                  | الدستور              | Referendum                           | استفتاء شعبى             |
| Constitutional amendments     | التعديلات الدستورية  | Reject                               | ينبذ                     |
| Constitutional article        | مادة دستورية         | remnants of the former regime        | قلوب النظام السابق       |
| Contestations                 | طعون                 | Resignation                          | استقالة                  |
| Corrupt system                | نظام فاسد            | Resignation                          | استقالة                  |
| Corruption                    | فساد                 | Retirement                           | التنحي                   |
| Corruption cases              | قضايا فساد           | Revolution                           | ثورة                     |
| Crescent and the Cross        | الهلال والصليب       | Ruling party                         | الحزب الحاكم             |
| Curfew                        | حظر التجوال          | Sacking of president of the republic | إقالة رئيس الجمهورية     |
| Decentralization              | اللامركزية           | Safety and security                  | الأمان والأمن            |
| Declaration                   | بيان / تصريح         | Salafis                              | السلفيين                 |
| Demands                       | مطالب                | Secret prisons                       | سجون سرية                |
| Demonstrate                   | يتظاهر               | Secret services                      | المخابرات                |
| Demonstration                 | مظاهرة               | sectarian strife                     | الفتنة الطائفية          |
| Development Corridor" project | مشروع "ممر التنمية"  | Security cementation                 | تعزيز أمنى               |
| Distress call                 | نداء استغاثة         | Seditions and conspiracies           | الفتن والمؤامرات         |
| Egyptian Interior Minister    | وزير الداخلية المصري | Sit – in                             | اعتصام                   |
| Election Commissions          | لجان الانتخابات      | Social corruption                    | فساد اجتماعي             |
| Elections                     | الانتخابات           | Social justice                       | العدالة الاجتماعية       |
| Elimination of corruption     | القضاء على الفساد    | Social reform                        | الإصلاح الاجتماعي        |
| embrace - hug                 | احتضن ؟              | Stability                            | الاستقرار                |
| Emergency Law                 | قانون الطوارئ        | Step down from the presidency        | يتنحى عن رئاسة الجمهورية |

|                                   |                         |                                 |                              |
|-----------------------------------|-------------------------|---------------------------------|------------------------------|
| Escape of prisoners and detainees | هروب السجناء والمعتقلين | Stirring sectarian strife       | إثارة الفتن الطائفية         |
| Excesses                          | تجاوزات                 | Stock exchange                  | البورصة                      |
| Forging the elections             | تزوير الانتخابات        | Supreme commander-in-chief      | القائد الأعلى للقوات المسلحة |
| Former president                  | رئيس الجمهورية السابق   | Supreme Judicial Commission     | اللجنة القضائية العليا       |
| High cost of living               | غلاء المعيشة            | Tahrir Square                   | ميدان التحرير                |
| hold a referendum                 | يجري استفتاء            | Talk of the Town                | حديث المدينة                 |
| Human Rights                      | حقوق الإنسان            | The process of money laundering | عملية غسل الأموال            |
| Impartial referendum              | استفتاء نزيه            | Thugs                           | البلطجية                     |
| Inheritance                       | التوريث                 | Topple                          | إطاحة                        |
| Inhuman practices                 | ممارسات لا إنسانية      | Track down the thugs            | تعقب البلطجية                |
| instability                       | زعزعة الاستقرار         | Track of the former regime      | تعقب النظام السابق           |
| Integral                          | تضامن                   | Uprising                        | انتفاضة                      |
| Intelligence agency               | ادارة المخابرات         | urban growth                    | النمو العمراني               |
| Issues                            | قضايا                   | Victims                         | ضحايا                        |
| Junta                             | مجلس عسكري              | Victims of detention            | المعتقلات ضحايا              |
| labour strikes                    | اضرابات عمالية          | Violation of sanctities         | انتهاك المقدسات              |
| Limited income                    | محدود الدخل             | Violations                      | انتهاكات                     |
| looting                           | نهب وسلب                | Withdrawal                      | انسحاب                       |
| Martyrs                           | شهداء                   | Youth revolution                | ثورة الشباب                  |
| Massacre                          | مجزرة                   |                                 |                              |

## Different events

|                            |                       |                              |                       |
|----------------------------|-----------------------|------------------------------|-----------------------|
| accusations                | اتهامات               | marvels - wonders            | معجزات - عجائب        |
| advanced technology        | تكنولوجيا متقدمة      | mass media                   | وسائل الاعلام         |
| advantage# disadvantage    | عيب X ميزة            | mastery of foreign languages | اجادة اللغات الأجنبية |
| African nations' cup       | كاس الأمم الأفريقية   | means - means of             | وسيلة - وسائل         |
| agricultural               | زراعي                 | means not an end             | وسيلة لا غاية         |
| aim at (v.ing) / ( مصدر )  | يهدف إلى              | means of entertainment       | وسيلة ترفية           |
| ambassador                 | السفير                | medical assistance           | مساعدة طبية           |
| among                      | بين ( أكثر من اثنين ) | medical field                | المجال الطبي          |
| any possible circumstances | أى ظروف محتملة        | meet the needs of the people | يلبى احتياجات الشعب   |
| any progress\ nation       | أمة\ أرى تقدم         | military governor            | الحاكم العسكري        |
| as a result of             | نتيجة لـ              | mineral wealth               | ثروة معدنية           |
| aspects = fields           | مجالات- نواحي         | minister                     | وزير                  |
| assassination              | اغتيال - إعدام- قتل   | ministry                     | وزارة                 |
| astronauts                 | رواد الفضاء           | mobilize armed forces        | تحشد قوات مسلحة       |
| athletics events           | أحداث رياضية          | modern technology            | التكنولوجيا الحديثة   |
| attitude                   | سلوك- اتجاه - موقف    | modification                 | تعديل                 |
| avoid the ghost of wars    | تجنب شبح الحروب       | monopoly                     | احتكار (سلعة)         |
| base                       | أساس - قاعدة          | moral values                 | القيم الأخلاقية       |
| be + aware of              | على علم بـ            | narcotics = drugs            | مواد مخدرة            |
| be + exposed to danger     | يتعرض للخطر           | national awareness           | الوعي القومي          |
| be + involved in           | متورط في              | national unity               | الوحدة الوطنية        |
| Be in a bad need of        | في حاجة ماسة إلى      | natural resources            | مصادر طبيعية          |
| be+armed with \ laden with | يتسلح \ يتحلى بـ      | necessity = a must           | ضرورة                 |
| benefit from               | يستفيد من             | negotiations                 | مفاوضات               |
| benefits                   | فوائد                 | NGOs                         | الجمعيات الغير حكومية |
| blood donors               | متبرعين بالدم         | nuclear power                | الطاقة النووية        |
| bombs                      | قنابل                 | obstacles = hinders          | عوائق                 |
| bright future              | مستقبل مشرق           | offer                        | يقدم                  |
| bright future              | مستقبل باهر           | offer necessary facilities   | تقدم التسهيلات        |
| bring the prices down      | تخفيض الأسعار         | on a wide scale              | على نطاق واسع         |
| bullets                    | الرصاص                | on equal footing             | على قدم المساواة      |
| call for                   | يدعو من- ينادى من أجل | optimism                     | التفاؤل               |
| campaigns                  | حملات                 | organize = host              | ينظم- تستضيف          |



|                               |                         |                                  |                     |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------|----------------------------------|---------------------|
| carry out                     | تتفد                    | out of date                      | قديم                |
| carry the flag of freedom     | يحمل راية الحرية        | outlaw                           | خارج على القانون    |
| celebrate                     | يحتفل                   | owe ( to)                        | ندين- مدين لـ       |
| celebrate ( with)             | يحتفل                   | participate in= share in         | يشارك في            |
| celebration                   | احتفال                  | pay (give ) attention to         | يعطى اهتمام لـ      |
| chase = run after             | يطارد                   | peace – loving country           | دولة محبة للسلام    |
| Christians                    | مسيحيين                 | people's need                    | احتياجات الشعب      |
| circumstances                 | الظروف                  | perform = render                 | يؤدي                |
| citizenship                   | المواطنة                | pessimism                        | التشاوم             |
| civilization                  | حضارة                   | pioneer                          | رائد                |
| combat = fight                | يكافح                   | pleased people                   | أسعدو الناس         |
| communication                 | الاتصالات               | Policy                           | السياسة             |
| comprehensive peace           | سلام شامل               | possible facilities              | التسهيلات الممكنة   |
| concerning                    | بشأن- بخصوص             | potentials                       | إمكانيات            |
| concessions                   | تنازل                   | presidency                       | الرئاسة             |
| confront any attack           | نتصدى لأي هجوم          | pressing problems                | المشكلات الملحة     |
| constitute / form             | يشكل                    | prevail                          | يسود- يعم           |
| constitution                  | الدستور                 | prime minister                   | رئيس الوزراء        |
| construction                  | تعمير- تشييد            | principles                       | مبادئ               |
| consume                       | يستهلك                  | priorities of the new government | أولويات الحكومة     |
| consumer                      | مستهلك                  | private Associations             | الجمعيات الأهلية    |
| contribute to + (v+ ing)      | يساهم في                | private sector                   | القطاع الخاص        |
| contribute to making decision | يساهم في صنع القرار     | professionals                    | محترفين             |
| convey = transport            | ينقل                    | proficiency                      | كفاءة               |
| convince = persuade           | يقنع                    | Profitable                       | مربح                |
| corner stone                  | ركن الزاوية             | promising youth                  | الشباب الواعد       |
| corruption                    | الفساد                  | promote                          | يرقى - يدعم         |
| craftsman                     | حرفي                    | Proof = evidence                 | دليل- برهان         |
| create                        | يخلق- يبدع- يسبب        | propaganda                       | دعاية               |
| creativity                    | الابتكار- الإبداع       | prospect for                     | ينقب على            |
| credit freeze                 | تجميد رصيد              | Prosperity / welfare             | الرخاء   الرفاهية   |
| critical situation            | موقف حرج                | protect from /against            | يحمى من   ضد        |
| cure \ treat                  | يعالج مرض/ مشكلة - علاج | prove                            | يثبت - يبرهن        |
| current events                | الأحداث الجارية         | provide... for                   | يوفر بـ             |
| deal in = trade in            | يتاجر في                | providing job opportunities      | توفير فرص عمل       |
| deal with =treat              | يتعامل مع               | public health = sanitation       | الصحة العامة        |
| decisive steps                | خطوات حاسمة             | public opinion                   | الرأي العام         |
| deepen - souls                | يعمق - نفوس             | public services                  | الخدمات العامة      |
| deepness of civilization      | عمق الحضارة             | purify air from                  | ينقى الهواء         |
| defy = challenge              | يتحدى                   | put an end to                    | نضع نهاية لـ        |
| demand freedom                | يطالب بالحرية           | qualifications                   | مؤهلات              |
| democratic thought            | تفكير ديمقراطي          | radiation                        | إشعاع               |
| destruction = havocking       | تخريب                   | raise the Egyptian flag          | يرفع العلم المصري   |
| developing countries          | الدول النامية           | rationalization of consumption   | ترشيد الاستهلاك     |
| development                   | التنمية                 | react                            | يتفاعل              |
| deviation                     | الانحراف                | realize                          | تدرك- يحقق          |
| dialogue                      | الحوار                  | reclaim the desert               | يستصلح الصحراء      |
| differ from                   | يختلف عن                | reclaiming                       | استصلاح             |
| different activities          | أنشطة مختلفة            | reclamation                      | استصلاح             |
| dignity / glory               | كرامة   مجد             | recycle                          | إعادة استخدام الشيء |
| dilemma = disaster = crisis   | مازق - ورطة - مصيبة     | reduce = cut down                | يخفض - يقلل         |
| disaster = catastrophe        | كارثة                   | refer to                         | يشير إلى            |
| discipline                    | النظام                  | referendum                       | استفتاء شعبي        |
| disputes                      | نزاعات- خلافات          | reflect                          | تعكس                |
| do without                    | يستغنى عن               | regime change                    | تغيير نظام الحكم    |
| do without /live without      | يستغنى عن               | regional ups and downs           | تغيرات اقلية        |

|                        |                         |                                |                        |
|------------------------|-------------------------|--------------------------------|------------------------|
| Don't let ...pile up   | لا تدع ...تتراكم        | reject foreign inerferance     | نرفض تدخل أجنبي        |
| double                 | يضاعف                   | relieve the burden             | يخفف العبء             |
| doubtless              | بلا شك                  | remain                         | يظل - يبقى             |
| driving licence        | رخصة قيادة              | renaissance                    | النهضة                 |
| drought                | الجفاف - قحط            | renew                          | يجدد                   |
| economic               | الاقتصادية              | reopening                      | إعادة افتتاح           |
| economic crises        | أزمة اقتصادية           | requirements                   | متطلبات                |
| economic integration   | تكامل اقتصادي           | resist = withstand             | يقاوم                  |
| economic reform        | الإصلاح الاقتصادي       | resist any attack on           | نقاوم أى اعتداء على    |
| education              | التعليم                 | resistance = withstand         | الصمود                 |
| educational system     | النظام التعليمي         | resolution / decree            | قرار ( حكومي )         |
| Egyptian economy       | الاقتصاد المصري         | respond to                     | يستجيب لـ              |
| elect - election       | ينتخب- انتخاب           | result from                    | ينتج عن                |
| electric sets          | أجهزة كهربائية          | revenue = income               | دخل / عائد             |
| embassy                | سفارة                   | revival                        | إحياء                  |
| emergency crisis       | الطارئة والازمات        | revolution                     | ثورة                   |
| enable ...to مصدر      | يمكن                    | rioters = agitators            | المشاغبين              |
| Encourage / defend for | يشجع /يدافع من أجل      | run the affairs of the country | يدير شؤون البلاد       |
| enrich                 | يثري / يخصب             | sacrifice                      | يضحى - أضحية           |
| epidemic               | وباء                    | saving                         | الإدخار                |
| establishments         | مؤسسات                  | scholars and thinkers          | العلماء والمفكرين      |
| evaluate               | يقيم- يقدر              | scientific methods             | الطرق العلمية          |
| exert great efforts    | تبذل جهود عظيمة         | security cementation           | تعزيز أمني             |
| exist / existing       | يوجد   الموجودة         | seek to = aspire ( try ) to    | تسعى - تصبو من أجل     |
| experience             | خبرة - تجربته فى الحياة | seek to impose sanctions       | تسعى افرض عقوبات       |
| facilitate             | تسهل                    | seize the golden opportunity   | ينتهب الفرصة الذهبية   |
| factors                | عوامل                   | self-control                   | ضبط النفس              |
| fight for \ against    | يحارب لصالح   ضد        | self-sacrifice                 | التضحية بالذات         |
| find a solution to     | يجد حل لـ               | service                        | خدمة                   |
| firm action            | إجراءات حازمة           | shyness and shame              | العار والخجل           |
| firm laws              | قوانين حازمة            | side with = stand by           | ينحاز لـ - يقف بجانب   |
| flourish / refresh     | تزهدهر   ينتعش          | sincere efforts                | جهود مخصصة             |
| fly-over bridges       | كباري علوية             | social and health care         | رعاية صحية واجتماعية   |
| foil these attempts    | احباط تلك المحاولات     | solidarity                     | التضامن                |
| food shortage          | نقص الغذاء              | sound democratic               | الديموقراطية السليمه   |
| foreign trade          | التجارة الخارجية        | spare no effort                | لا يدخر وسعا           |
| free of charge         | مجانا                   | spirit refreshing              | تهذيب الروح            |
| freedom of opinion     | حرية الرأى              | sports festival                | مهرجان رياض            |
| from cradle to grave   | من المهد الى اللحد      | spread                         | ينتشر- ينتشر           |
| fruitful               | مثمر                    | spread corruption              | ينتشر الفساد           |
| fury = rage = anger    | هياج - غضب              | stability =settlement          | استقرار                |
| gain a good reputation | يكسب سمعة جيدة          | stand as a one man             | نقف كرجل واحد          |
| gap                    | فجوة                    | stick to                       | يلتزم بـ - يتمسك بـ    |
| generation             | جيل                     | strengthen                     | يقوى                   |
| giant projects         | مشروعات عملاقة          | strict - lessen = limit        | تحد - تقلل             |
| globalization          | العولمة                 | strong performance             | عرض - أداء قوى         |
| glorious history       | تاريخ مجيد              | strong relations               | علاقات قوية            |
| good citizen           | مواطن صالح              | suffer from                    | يعانى من               |
| governorate            | محافظة                  | summit conference              | مؤتمر القمة            |
| graduate of            | خريج                    | support                        | يساند - تأييد - مساندة |
| great fun              | متعة كبيرة              | swine (pig) flu = H1N1         | انفلوانزا الخنازير     |
| greatness              | عظمة                    | symptoms                       | أعراض (مرض)            |
| heavenly religions     | الاديان السماوية        | take measures                  | تتخذ اجراءات           |
| heritage               | التراث                  | take wide steps                | يتخذ خطوات واسعة       |
| hinder                 | يعوق                    | tanks                          | دبابات                 |
| honour/ pride          | يكرم - يشرف   فخر       | task                           | مهمة                   |

|                                 |                           |                                  |                      |
|---------------------------------|---------------------------|----------------------------------|----------------------|
| hostility = enmity = aggression | عداء                      | tell the truth                   | يقول الحقيقة         |
| housing problem                 | مشكلة الإسكان             | thanks to                        | بفضل                 |
| huge responsibility             | مسؤولية ضخمة              | the basis of                     | أساس                 |
| humanity                        | الإنسانية - البشرية       | the core of                      | جوهر - لب - أساس     |
| illegal migration               | هجره غير شرعيه            | the current of reform            | تيار الإصلاح         |
| illiteracy                      | الأمية                    | the high cost of living          | ارتفاع تكلفة المعيشة |
| impose restrictions             | يفرض قيود                 | the movement of                  | حركة                 |
| improve                         | يحسن                      | the narrow Nile Valley           | وادي النيل الضيق     |
| in anticipation of              | تحسبا لـ                  | the nightmare of terrorism       | كابوس الإرهاب        |
| in favour of                    | مؤيد لـ                   | the only solution                | الحل الوحيد          |
| inaugurate                      | يفتح                      | the return of rights to          | عودة الحقوق الى      |
| inauguration                    | افتتاح                    | the sincerity and loyalty        | الأخلاص والولاء      |
| independence                    | الاستقلال                 | the space channels               | القنوات الفضائية     |
| individuals                     | الأفراد                   | the standard of living           | مستوى المعيشة        |
| industrial                      | صناعي                     | the state - nation - home        | الدولة - أمة - وطن   |
| infection                       | العدوى                    | the underground metro            | مترو الإنفاق         |
| inflation of population         | التضخم السكاني            | third world countries            | دول العالم الثالث    |
| influence                       | تؤثر - تأثير (معنوي)      | threat \ threaten                | تهديد \ يهدد         |
| information systems             | نظم المعلومات             | assassinate                      | يغتال                |
| infrastructure                  | البنية الأساسية (التحتية) | to a great extent                | على حد كبير          |
| intense competition             | منافسة قوية               | training centers                 | مراكز تدريب          |
| investment                      | استثمار                   | try the corrupt                  | يحاكم الفاسدين       |
| irritate people against         | يثير - يهيج الناس ضد      | undermine security and stability | زعزعة الاستقرار      |
| issue laws                      | تصدر قانون                | unemployed youth                 | الشباب العاطل        |
| land and sea transport          | البرى والبحرى             | unpaved roads                    | والطرق غير الممهدة   |
| launch a campaign               | يطلق - يشن حملة           | unsuitable for                   | غير ملائم بـ         |
| launch a campaign against       | يشن حملة ضد               | up to date                       | حديث                 |
| legitimate channels             | القنوات المشروعة          | vary - various                   | يتنوع - عديد         |
| limited / low-income            | محدودى الدخل              | vocational training              | التدريب المهني       |
| lock up                         | يحتجز                     | wage a war against               | يشن حرب ضد           |
| long live                       | يعيش                      | wage the flame of sedition       | يشعل فتيل الفتنة     |
| loyalty and belonging           | الولاء والانتماء          | we are compelled to              | نحن مجبرين أن        |
| make up for                     | يعوض                      | western culture                  | الثقافة الغربية      |
| make us aware of                | يجعلنا على وعى            | with great speed                 | بسرعة فائقة          |
| manufacture                     | تصنيع - يصنع              | world armament race              | سباق التسلح العالمي  |
| martyrs                         | الشهداء                   | world environment day            | يوم البيئة العالمي   |

### Science – culture – space

|                      |                |                     |                     |                      |                 |
|----------------------|----------------|---------------------|---------------------|----------------------|-----------------|
| Examine              | يفحص           | Invent              | يخترع               | Ignorance            | الجهل           |
| Miracles             | معجزات         | Inventiveness       | القدرة علي الابتكار | Ignorant             | جاهل            |
| Technology           | التقنية        | Manufacture         | يصنع                | Eliminate illiteracy | يقضي علي الامية |
| Diagnose             | يشخص           | Inventions          | اختراعات            | Civilized society    | مجتمع متحضر     |
| Artificial satellite | قمر اصطناعي    | Inventor            | مخترع               | Ignore               | يتجاهل          |
| Discoveries          | اكتشافات       | Discoverer          | مكتشف               | Refrigerator         | ثلاجة           |
| Electric iron        | مكواة كهربائية | Discovery           | اكتشاف              | Heater               | سخان            |
| Electric fan         | مروحة كهربائية | Elements            | عناصر               | Washing machine      | غسالة           |
| Industrialism        | التصنيع        | Scientific research | البحث العلمي        | Cooker               | بوتاجاز         |
| Industrialize        | يصنع           | Symptoms            | أعراض               |                      |                 |

### Economy

|                 |                   |                    |              |
|-----------------|-------------------|--------------------|--------------|
| Birth – control | تحديد النسل       | Ideal society      | مجتمع مثالي  |
| Crowded with    | مزدحم بـ          | increase           | يزيد - زيادة |
| Economic crisis | الازمة الاقتصادية | Over – crowdedness | شدة الزحام   |

|                   |                  |                               |                        |
|-------------------|------------------|-------------------------------|------------------------|
| Economic progress | التقدم الاقتصادي | Over – population problem     | مشكلة زيادة السكان     |
| Economic system   | النظام الاقتصادي | Self – reliance               | الاعتماد على الذات     |
| Economical        | مقتصد            | Self sufficiency              | الاكتفاء الذاتي        |
| Economise         | يقتصد            | socialism                     | الاشتراكية             |
| Economist         | علماء الاقتصاد   | The economic open door policy | سياسة انفتاح الاقتصادي |
| Economy           | الاقتصاد         | The new world order           | النظام العالمي الجديد  |
| Family planning   | تنظيم الاسرة     | Transport problem             | مشكلة النقل            |
| Health insurance  | التامين الصحي    | Unemployed                    | غير موظف / عاطل        |
| Health services   | خدمات صحية       | Unemployment                  | البطالة                |
| Housing problem   | مشكلة الاسكان    | Welfare and prosperity        | الرفاهية والرخاء       |

### Transport

|                |                  |                           |                        |                      |                |
|----------------|------------------|---------------------------|------------------------|----------------------|----------------|
| Air crash      | حادث تصادم طائرة | Cross – rods              | تقاطع الطرق            | Railway station      | محطة سكة حديد  |
| Arrival lounge | صالة القdom      | Departure lounge          | صالة المغادرة          | Run ways             | ممرات          |
| Avenue         | طريق مشجر        | Flow of traffic           | انسياب المرور          | Ship                 | سفينة          |
| ban = prohibit | يمنع – يحظر      | Landing                   | هبوط                   | Side street          | شارع جانبي     |
| Boat           | قارب             | Lorry                     | عربة لوري              | Sign                 | لافتة          |
| Carriage       | عربة في قطار     | Miss                      | يفقد – يفوته           | Take off             | اقلاع          |
| Cart           | عربة كارو        | No parking                | ممنوع الوقوف           | Time tale            | جدول مواعيد    |
| Catch          | يلحق بـ          | platform                  | رصيف ميناء             | Traffic instructions | تعليمات المرور |
| City center    | وسط المدينة      | Private cars              | سيارات خاصة            | Traffic regulation   | تنظيمات المرور |
| Comfortable    | مريح             | Prohibition               | حظر – منع              | Tunnel               | نفق            |
| Conductor      | كمسري            | Public means of transport | وسائل المواصلات العامة | Uncomfortable        | غير مريح       |

### Tourism

|                     |                  |                      |                   |                     |                       |
|---------------------|------------------|----------------------|-------------------|---------------------|-----------------------|
| Advertise           | يعلن عن          | Go on a journey      | يقوم بجولة        | Sight - seeing      | رؤية المعالم السياحية |
| ancient Egyptians   | القدماء المصريين | Go on a tour         | يقوم بجولة سياحية | Temples and mosques | المعابد والمساجد      |
| ancient remains     | الاثار القديمة   | Guide                | يرشد – مرشد       | The valley of kings | وادي الملوك           |
| Baggage / luggage   | امتعة السفر      | Hard currency        | العملة الصعبة     | Tour                | يتجول                 |
| Book = reserve      | يحجز             | mark of civilization | رمز الحضارة       | Tourism industry    | صناعة السياحة         |
| Booking clerk       | موظف الحجز       | Ministry of tourism  | وزارة السياحة     | Tourist             | سائح – سياحي          |
| citadel             | القلعة           | Monuments            | اثار              | Tourist agency      | وكالة سياحية          |
| Civilized behaviour | سلوك متحضر       | museums              | متاحف             | Tourist awareness   | وعي سياحي             |
| conducted tour      | جولة مع مرشد     | National income      | الدخل القومي      | Tourist information | معلومات سياحية        |
| Cruise              | رحلة نهريّة      | Pharaohs             | الاثار الفرعونية  | Tourist villages    | قري – سياحة           |
| Feasts              | اعياد            | Pharaonic remains    | الاثار الفرعونية  | Traveler            | مسافر                 |
| Flight              | رحلة جوية        | Provide employment   | يوفر فرص العمل    | Voyage              | رحلة بحرية            |

### Mass Media

|               |                 |                         |               |                      |                    |
|---------------|-----------------|-------------------------|---------------|----------------------|--------------------|
| Amuse         | يسلي            | Editor-in-chief         | رئيس التحرير  | Postpone             | يؤجل               |
| Amusement     | تسلية           | Free press              | صحافة حرة     | Press                | صحافة              |
| Author        | مؤلف            | Humour                  | فكاهة         | Producer             | منتج               |
| Candid camera | الكاميرا الخفية | Interpret               | يترجم فوري    | Public relations     | علاقات اجتماعية    |
| Classic       | كلاسيكي         | Interpreter             | مترجم فوري    | Realistic films      | افلام واقعية       |
| Classicism    | كلاسيكية        | Introduce               | يقدم          | Recommend            | يوصي بـ            |
| Critic        | ناقد            | Introduction            | تقديم – مقدمة | Romantic             | رومانسي            |
| Critical      | نقدي – حرج      | Journalism              | صحافة         | Rumour               | اشاعة              |
| Criticism     | نقد             | Journalist              | محرر          | Sound and light show | عرض الصوت والضوء   |
| Criticize     | بنقد            | minister of information | وزير الاعلام  | TV screen            | شاشة التلفزيون     |
| Director      | مخرج            | News agency             | وكالة انباء   | TV serials           | مسلسلات تليفزيونية |
| Editor        | محرر            | Owe to                  | يدين لـ       | TV viewers           | مشاهدي التلفزيون   |

## Translate into English (1980 – 2010)

1. يحذر الأطباء الناس من التدخين إذ أنه السبب في كثير من الأمراض (1980)

2. تبذل الحكومة أقصى جهدها لتمكين المواطن المصرى من مجابهة ارتفاع تكاليف المعيشه (1980)

3. يتسلم الكتاب والعلماء جوائز قيمه كل عام فى حفل كبيرو يحضر هذا الحفل رئيس الجمهوريه ليسلمهم الجوائز (1981)

4. لقد أثبت الأطباء أن من لا يدخنون مطلقا يعيشون حياه أطول وأكثر صحه لذا تناقص كثيرا عدد المدخنين 0(1982)

5. يعتبر تهر النيل مصدرا للرخاء لشعبى مصر والسودان (1983)

6. من الطبيعى ان تكون لمصر علاقات قويه مع السودان. (1983)

7. إن الضوضاء التى تسببها المدينه الحديثه تؤثر تأثيرا سينا عى سمعنا 0 (1984)

8. علينا ألا نزعج المرضى أو الطلبة الذين يستذكرون دروسهم وذلك بمراعاة الهدوء 0 (1984)

9. تسعى الحكومه الى توفير احتياجات الشعب بكل السبل وهذا يستلزم زياده الانتاج 0 (1985)

10. يجب أن نتحد ونقف كرجل واحد خلف رئيسنا المحبوب الذى يعمل فى صمت من أجل رخاء مصر (1986)

11. إن السد العالى يعنى لكل مصرى فخور بمصريته مياها تروى الأرض وتحمى الشعب من قحط الجفاف وكهرباء تدير مصانعه (1987)

12. جرت العاده أن تحتفل كل اسره فى مصر بعيد الام فى الحادى والعشرون من مارس كل عام ونظرا لاشتراك كل فرد فى الاسره فى هذا الاحتفال فقد سمي بعيد الاسره (1988)

13. إن تزايد السكان فى دوله ناميه يعوقها عن التقدم السريع (1989)

14. يعد إنشاء الكثير من مكتبات الطفل خطوه هامه نحو إثراء ثقافه الطفل (1990)

15. ستكون جنوب سيناء فى المستقبل القريب مركز سياحيا هاما. (1991)

16. لقد وهب الله مصر كثير من الموارد الطبيعيه التى لو احسن استغلالها لاصبنا من أغنى الدول. (1991)

17. من الضرورى إعادته النظر فى الخريطه السكانيه لمصر والاتجاه لاستصلاح الصحراء بدلا من التكديس على ضفتى النيل (92)

18. تنعم مصر بثوره ثقافيه تتمثل فى مكتبات الاطفال و الشباب فى المدن والقرى على السواء (1993)

19. مسؤليه كل مصرى تجاه الاشجار والزهور كبيره فهى تقلل من نسبه التلوث البيئى (1994)

20. تشجع الحكومه رجال الاعمال فى المصرين على إنشاء المصانع وإستصلاح الاراضى خاصه فى سيناء والمناطق الصحراويه (1995)

21. كان لزاما على مصر أن تدعو لمؤتمر عالمى يهدف إلى الإستمرار فى عمله السلام ومكافحه الارهاب (1996)

22. يستطيع المصريون تحويل الصحراء الى ارض خضراء لانتاج المزيد من الغذاء (1996)

23. للاختراعات الحديثه الكثير من المزايا كما؟ أن لها بعض العيوب (1997)

24. تتطلع جميع شعوب العالم الى العيش معا فى حب وسلام (1997)

25. لقد فاز الفريق القومى المصرى لكره القدم بكأس افريقيا واسعد كل المصريين (1998)

26. إن زراعه الصحراء وبناء المدن الجديده ينمى الاقتصاد القومى ويحل الكثير من المشاكل الاجتماعيه (1998)

27. كل عام يسلم رئيس الجمهوريه الكتاب والعلماء المتميزين جوائز قيمه (1999)

28. على كل فرد أن يشارك فى تحمل المسئوليه للتغلب على مشاكلنا الاقتصاديه والاجتماعيه والبيئيه (1999)

29. تبذل الحكومه أقصى جهدها لإيجاد فرص عمل للشباب وبناء مساكن لهم (2000)

30. يجب ان نستخدم أفضل الطرق لتربيه أطفالنا الصغار (2000)

31. فى كل عام يأتى السياح الى مصر ليستمتعوا بالجو الجميل فى الشتاء (2000)

32. تعمل الدوله على رعايه الموهوبين وتنميه مواهبهم (2001)

33. يقدم العلماء الجديد كل يوم لخدمه البشريه (2001)

34. ان هوايتى المفضله هى قراءه القصص الخياليه والاستماع الى الموسيقى (2001)

35. سيتغير العام القادم شكل ومحتوى الكتاب المدرسى (2002)

36. ان المعرفه والابتكار هما قاعدتا التقدم فى المستقبل (2002)

37. ان حفلات الزفاف مناسبات هامه فى كل بلد وهناك تقاليد للزفاف تختلف باختلاف البلد (2002)

38. ان الخيال العلمى عاده ما يكون محاوله جاده للكتابه عن شكل الحياه فى المستقبل او فى عالم اخر (2002)

39. نفخر بأن التعليم هو المشروع القومى الأول فى مصر (2003)

40. أحب الذهاب الى الأوبرا للاستماع بالموسيقى الراقيه (2003)

41. تتأثر السياحة تأثراً كبيراً بالأحداث الجارية في العالم (2003)
42. تولي الحكومة اهتماماً كبيراً لإقامة المشروعات في توشكى والوادي الجديد (2003)
43. الحضارة تزدهر أفضل في اوقات السلام (2004)
44. يجب ان يلتحق الطالب بالكلية التي تناسب مواهبه وقدراته (2004)
45. يجب ان نستخدم التكنولوجيا الحديثه في جميع مجالات الحياه وخاصة الانتاج (2004)
46. ان الجهود التي تبذل من اجل تحسين الصحه لايمكن ان تتم بنجاح الا بتعاون الافراد مع الحكومه (2004)
47. تنشأ المكتبات العامه في كل مكان لتشجيع افراد الاسره على القراءه (2005)
48. لقد اصبح متاحا لكل طالب اقتناء جهاز حاسب الي (2005)
49. يجب ان يعرف العالم بأسره ان مصر بلد محب للسلام و ضد الارهاب (2005)
50. لقد تقدمت جراحه زراعه القلب في مصر تقدما ملحوظا (2005)
51. تدعو الديانات السماويه كلها الى الحب والسلام والتسامح ونبذ العنف (2006)
52. لقد وهب الله مصر الكثير من الاماكن السياحيه الجذابه والطقس الرائع (2006)
53. حصلت مصر على كأس الأمم الأفريقيه هذا العام محققه بذلك انجازا عظيما (2006)
54. يستخدم الطلاب المصريون أجهزة الكمبيوتر في مدارسهم وسيكون لذلك أثره العظيم في تقدم مصر (2006)
55. من حقه ان تعبر عن رأيك بحريه ولكن يجب ان تحترم رأي الآخرين (2007)
56. يجب أن نستفيد من تجارب الآخرين في الصناعه والتكنولوجيا (2007)
57. تحذر الدوله الشباب دائما من الهجره غير الشرعيه لتجنب التعرض للمخاطر (2007)
58. كان للعلماء والمفكرين العرب تأثير كبير على الثقافه الغربيه (2007)
59. نحن نعيش الآن عصر الاتصالات الذي جعل العالم عالما مفتوحا (2008)
60. يجب على الوالدين توجيه ورعايه ابنائهم ليواصلوا رحله الحياه بأمان (2008)

61. الأسعار المرتفعة ونقص الطعام هما المشكلتين الرئيسيتين التي تعاني منهما كل دول العالم (2008)

62. تشغل قضية حقوق الانسان الان الاهتمام الرئيسى لمنظمات عالميه مختلفه (2008)

63. تسببت سحابة الرماد البركاني في تعطيل النقل الجوي و احدث خسائر اقتصادية فادحة.(2010)

64. يؤكد خبراء البيئة أن النسر مهددة بالانقراض بسبب الصيد الجائر . (2010)

**Translate into Arabic ( 1998 – 2009 )**

Start your day by drinking two glasses of water and drink at least six to eight more during the rest of the day. Water is absolutely vital for the body to function properly. Water also helps to clean the body, so one should take a daily bath.

Our deserts are one of our chief sources of wealth. If we give them due care, we can increase our national income and solve many of our problems by increasing the cultivated land and finding new jobs for our youth.

People don't have the same idea about how children are greatly influenced by their home and school. Inside his home, the child gets his first lessons in behaving towards others. School also helps him to learn to respect his elders.

Sports are useful for character development. In their books, children learn about such values as unselfishness, courage and love of one's country. However, what is learned by experience in sports has a deeper effect on a child's character.

There are different kinds of gardens. Gardens can be made with every plant carefully placed as a part of a man-made design. Gardens can also be made to look as if every flower has sprung from seeds sown by nature. Public parks are for every one to enjoy and relax.

The Nile TV Channel is the first international Egyptian channel transmitting 24 hours a day. Its programmes are in English and French. It covers all Arab and European countries and the United States as well.

Great efforts have been made towards equality between men and women. Women demand equal pay for equal work. Although women have gained many of their rights, they still have a long way for complete equality.

The three-day conference took place at the Bibliotheca (library) Alexandria. It was attended by 170 Arab businessmen and thinkers. Journalists were not allowed to enter so that ideas could be exchanged freely.



.....  
.....  
.....  
**People travel to foreign countries because they believe they would be different from home in their architecture, food and national dress. However, one large city is very much like another. Perhaps a nation's greatest attraction is its people.**  
.....  
.....

.....  
.....  
.....  
**Protecting our heritage is up to us. It is not the responsibility of the government alone but of individuals as well. If we don't look after our heritage, it could easily disappear like most of the wonders of the world.**  
.....  
.....

.....  
.....  
.....  
**Great efforts have been made towards equality between men and women. Women are offered the same jobs and get equal pay for equal work. Although women have gained many of their rights, they still have some demands to reach complete equality.**  
.....  
.....

.....  
.....  
.....  
**There are many things to be said in favour of technological advancement. It undoubtedly makes people's lives easier. Without the benefits that technology brings, the world would be a much harder place to live in.**  
.....  
.....

.....  
.....  
.....  
**Do you know how dangerous the streets can be? It affects us both physically and mentally. So, reducing streets is something that we should all try to do through some form of exercise.**  
.....  
.....

.....  
.....  
.....  
**No one is going to hand you success on a silver plate. If you want to make it, you will have to make it on your own. In order to be successful, you should have courage, ambition, self-confidence and self-dependence**  
.....  
.....

.....  
.....  
.....  
**The car is a quick means of transportation. Yet, pollution and traffic congestion are directly proportional to the increase numbers of cars. Consequently, scientists are trying to develop cleaner cars that may be kinder to the environment**  
.....  
.....

## 9 – Irregular Verbs

| <i>Infinitive</i> |             | <i>Past Simple</i> | <i>Past Participle</i> |
|-------------------|-------------|--------------------|------------------------|
| arise             | ينشأ        | arose              | arisen                 |
| awake             | يستيقظ      | awoke              | awaken / awaked        |
| be                | يكون        | Was / were         | been                   |
| bear              | يتحمل       | bore               | borne                  |
| bear              | تلد         | bore               | born                   |
| beat              | يهزم        | beat               | beaten                 |
| Become            | يصبح        | became             | become                 |
| begin             | يبدأ        | began              | begun                  |
| bend              | ينحني       | bent               | bent                   |
| bet               | يراهن       | bet                | bet                    |
| bind              | يربط        | bound              | bound                  |
| bite              | يعض         | bit                | bitten/ bit            |
| bleed             | ينزف        | bled               | bled                   |
| bless             | يبارك       | blessed/ blest     | blessed / blest        |
| blow              | يضرب / يهب  | blew               | blown                  |
| break             | يكسر        | broke              | broken                 |
| breed             | يربي        | bred               | bred                   |
| bring             | يحضر        | brought            | brought                |
| broadcast         | يذيع        | broadcast-ed       | broadcast-ed           |
| build             | يبنى        | built              | built                  |
| burn              | يحرق        | burnt              | burnt                  |
| burst             | ينفجر       | burst              | burst                  |
| buy               | يشترى       | bought             | bought                 |
| Catch             | يلحق بـ     | caught             | caught                 |
| choose            | يختار       | chose              | chosen                 |
| cling             | يتمسك       | clung              | clung                  |
| come              | يأتي        | came               | come                   |
| cost              | يكلف        | cost               | cost                   |
| cut               | يقطع        | cut                | Cut                    |
| creep             | يزحف        | crept              | crept                  |
| deal              | تعامل       | dealt              | dealt                  |
| dig               | يحفر        | dug                | dug                    |
| do                | يفعل        | Did                | done                   |
| draw              | يرسم        | drew               | drown                  |
| dream             | يحلم        | dreamt/ dreamed    | dreamed / dreamt       |
| Drink             | يشرب        | drank              | drunk                  |
| drive             | يقود        | drove              | driven                 |
| Dwell             | يقطن / يعيش | dwelt              | dwelt                  |
| eat               | يأكل        | ate                | eaten                  |
| fall              | يسقط        | fell               | fallen                 |
| feed              | يغذي        | fed                | fed                    |
| fight             | يحارب       | fought             | fought                 |
| find              | يجد         | found              | found                  |
| flee              | يهرب        | fled               | fled                   |
| fling             | يرمي بقوة   | flung              | flung                  |
| fly               | يطير        | flew               | flown                  |
| forbid            | يمنع        | forbade            | forbidden              |
| forecast          | يتنبأ       | forecast / ed      | forecast / ed          |
| foresee           | يتنبأ       | foresaw            | foreseen               |
| foretell          | يتنبأ       | foretold           | foretold               |

|         |              |                 |                 |
|---------|--------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| forget  | ينسى         | forgot          | forgotten       |
| forgive | يسامح        | forgave         | forgiven        |
| freeze  | يتجمد        | froze           | frozen          |
| get     | يحصل علي     | got             | got / gotten    |
| give    | يعطي         | gave            | given           |
| go      | يذهب         | went            | gone            |
| grind   | يطحن         | ground          | ground          |
| grow    | يزرع / ينمو  | grew            | grown           |
| hang    | يعلق / يشنق  | hung/ hanged    | hung / hanged   |
| have    | يملك         | had             | had             |
| hear    | يسمع         | heard           | heard           |
| hide    | يختبئ        | hid             | hidden/hid      |
| hit     | يضرب         | hit             | hit             |
| hold    | يمسك         | held            | held            |
| hurt    | يؤذي         | hurt            | hurt            |
| keep    | يحفظ         | kept            | kept            |
| kneel   | يركع         | knelt           | knelt           |
| knit    | يربط         | knitted / knit  | knitted/ knit   |
| know    | يعرف         | knew            | known           |
| lay     | يضع / تبييض  | laid            | laid            |
| lead    | يقود         | led             | led             |
| learn   | يتعلم        | learnt/ learned | learnt/ learned |
| leave   | يغادر        | left            | left            |
| lend    | يقرض         | lent            | lent            |
| let     | يدع / يسمح   | let             | let             |
| lie     | تقع / يستلقي | lay             | lain            |
| light   | يضيء         | lighted/ lit    | lighted/ lit    |
| lose    | يفقد         | lost            | lost            |
| make    | يجعل / يصنع  | made            | made            |
| mean    | يعني         | meant           | meant           |
| meet    | يقابل        | met             | met             |
| melt    | يذوب         | melted          | melted/ molten  |
| pay     | يدفع         | paid            | paid            |
| prove   | يبهرن        | proven/ proved  | proven/ proved  |
| put     | يضع          | put             | put             |
| read    | يقرأ         | read            | read            |
| ride    | يركب         | rode            | ridden          |
| ring    | يدق          | rang            | rung            |
| rise    | ينهض / يرتفع | rose            | risen           |
| run     | يجري         | ran             | run             |
| saw     | ينشر         | sawed           | sawn/ sawed     |
| say     | يقول         | said            | said            |
| see     | يري          | saw             | seen            |
| seek    | يبحث عن      | sought          | sought          |
| sell    | يبيع         | sold            | sold            |
| send    | يرسل         | sent            | sent            |
| set     | يبدأ / يغرب  | set             | set             |
| sew     | يخيط الثياب  | sewed           | sewn            |
| shake   | يهز          | shook           | shaken          |
| shave   | يحلق         | shaved          | shaved/shaven   |
| shine   | يلمع / يضيء  | shone           | shone           |
| shoot   | يصوب         | shot            | shot            |
| show    | يعرض         | showed          | showed/ shown   |
| shut    | يعلق         | shut            | shut            |
| sing    | يغني         | sang            | sung            |
| sink    | يغرق         | sank            | sunk            |

|            |               |                  |                  |
|------------|---------------|------------------|------------------|
| sit        | يجلس          | sat              | sat              |
| slay       | يذبح          | slew             | slain            |
| sleep      | ينام          | slept            | slept            |
| sling      | يقذف          | slung            | slung            |
| slink      | ينسل خلسة     | slunk            | slunk            |
| smell      | يشم           | smelt            | smelt            |
| sow        | يبذر / يزرع   | sowed            | sown             |
| speak      | يتكلم         | spoke            | spoken           |
| speed      | يسرع          | sped/speeded     | sped/ speeded    |
| spell      | يتهجي         | spelt/ spelled   | spelt/ spelled   |
| spend      | يقضي          | spent            | spent            |
| spill      | يريق / يسكب   | spilt / spilled  | spilt / spilled  |
| spin       | ينسج / يغزل   | spun/ span       | spun             |
| spit       | يبصق          | spat             | spat             |
| split      | ينقسم / يشطر  | split            | split            |
| spoil      | يفسد          | spoilt / spoiled | spoilt / spoiled |
| spread     | ينشر          | spread           | spread           |
| spring     | يقفز          | sprang           | sprung           |
| stand      | يقف           | stood            | stood            |
| steal      | يسرق          | stole            | stolen           |
| stick      | يلصق          | stuck            | stuck            |
| sting      | يلدغ          | stung            | stung            |
| stink      | ينتن          | Stank/stunk      | stunk            |
| Stride     | يمشي سريعا    | strode           | stridden         |
| Strike     | يضرب          | struck           | struck/ stricken |
| strive     | يكافح         | strove           | striven          |
| swear      | يقسم          | swore            | sworn            |
| sweep      | يبكي          | swept            | swept            |
| swell      | يتورم         | swelled          | swelled/ swollen |
| swim       | يسبح          | swam             | swum             |
| swing      | يهز           | swung            | swung            |
| take       | ياخذ          | took             | taken            |
| teach      | يعلم          | taught           | taught           |
| tear       | يمزق          | tore             | torn             |
| tell       | يخبر          | told             | told             |
| think      | يعتقد         | thought          | thought          |
| throw      | يلقي          | threw            | thrown           |
| tread      | يدوس          | trod             | trodden          |
| Understand | يفهم          | understood       | understood       |
| upset      | يضايق         | upset            | upset            |
| wake       | يستيقظ        | woke             | woken            |
| wear       | يرتدي         | wore             | worn             |
| weave      | ينسج          | wove             | woven            |
| wed        | يزوج          | wedded           | Wedded/wed       |
| weep       | يبكي          | wept             | wept             |
| win        | يفوز          | won              | won              |
| wind       | يلتوي / يلف   | winded/ wound    | winded/ wound    |
| withdraw   | ينسحب         | withdrew         | withdrawn        |
| wring      | ينترع / يعتصر | wrung            | wrung            |
| write      | يكتب          | wrote            | written          |